

# 1 JOBS

## STUDENT'S BOOK PAGES 8–9

### actor /'æktə(r)/ Noun

an *actor* is a person who performs in a play at a theatre or in films or on television

*the actors sometimes write their own lines | I've always wanted to be a film actor*

Verb: *act* | Noun: *acting*

- *acteur*

### build /bɪld/ Verb

to *build* something means to make it by putting lots of things together. People build large things such as houses, factories, bridges, shopping centres, etc. Things like houses and shops are buildings

*they're building a new sports stadium there | the palace was built in 1772*

Noun: *building* | Noun: *builder*

*it's the ugliest building in the city*

- *construire*

### competitive /kəm'petətɪv/ Adjective

if an activity is *competitive*, everyone doing it is trying hard to do better and be more successful than everyone else

Collocates: very/highly/extremely competitive

*he's tried to get a job in TV, but it's very competitive | advertising is a highly competitive industry*

Noun: *competition* | Noun: *competitor* | Verb: *compete*

Collocates: stiff competition

*they face stiff (strong) competition from two new Chinese firms*

- *concurrentiel*

### construction /kən'strʌkʃ(ə)n/ Noun uncount

*construction* is the work of building something

*the construction of the new school is due to start next month | the airport is still under construction (being built)*

Verb: *construct*

- *construction*

### customer /'kʌstəmə(r)/ Noun

*customers* are the people who go into a shop to buy things

*we try to give our customers what they want | she was a regular customer at her local butcher's*

- *client*

### engineer /,endʒɪ'nɪə(r)/ Noun

an *engineer* is someone whose job is making or mending machines, buildings, roads, etc.

*an electrical engineer | he's an engineer at the Ford car factory*

Noun: *engineering*

- *ingénieur*

### get on /,get 'ɒn/ Phrasal verb

if you *get on* with someone, you like them and have a friendly relationship with them

*do you get on with the people you work with? | I never got on with my boss*

- *s'entendre*

### hours /'aʊə(r)z/ Noun plural

your *hours* are the number of hours you have to spend at work every day or every week. The *hours* of a business are the times when it is open

Collocates: work long hours | opening hours

*workers are demanding higher wages and shorter working hours | I've been working very long hours this week*

- *horaires*

### join /dʒɔɪn/ Verb

if you *join* an organisation, you become a member of it

*she's applied to join the tennis club | Estonia joined NATO in 2004*

- *rejoindre*

### journalist /'dʒɜː(r)nəlɪst/ Noun

a *journalist* is someone who writes for a newspaper or magazine, or who reports on the news on television or radio

*a journalist wanted to interview me about my career | she's a journalist who reports for the Times newspaper*

Noun: *journalism*

- *journaliste*

### law firm /'lɔː ,fɜː(r)m/ Noun

a *law firm* is a company which employs lawyers and provides advice and help about the law

*he is the head of a New York law firm | I tried to get a job at a law firm in Manchester*

- *étude d'avocats*

**lawyer** /'lɔːjə(r)/ Noun

a *lawyer* is someone who is qualified in law, and whose job is to give people advice about the law and to work for them if they are in court

*I need to get a lawyer to look at the contract | if you need advice, ring your lawyer*

- *avocat*

**manager** /'mænɪdʒə(r)/ Noun

a *manager* is someone whose job involves running part of an organisation and telling other people what work to do

*he's a sales manager for a car company | to be successful, managers need to be good at listening*

Verb: *manage*

- *responsable*

**marketing** /'mɑː(r)kɪtɪŋ/ Noun uncount

*marketing* is the work involved in deciding how to advertise and sell a product, what price it should be, where it should be sold, etc.

*the company's marketing department | we need to do some more marketing*

- *marketing*

**nurse** /nɜː(r)s/ Noun

a *nurse* is someone whose job is to look after people who are ill, especially in a hospital

*he's a nurse at the local hospital | the nurse put a bandage round his leg*

Noun: *nursing*

- *infirmier*

**pilot** /'paɪlət/ Noun

a *pilot* is someone who flies planes, usually as a job

*an airline pilot | he was the first pilot to fly Concorde*

- *pilote*

**politician** /,pɒlə'tɪʃ(ə)n/ Noun

politics is the work of getting power and running a country. People who do this are *politicians*

*people don't always trust politicians | Barack Obama is the most famous politician in the world*

Noun: *politics* | Adjective: *political*

- *politicien*

**primary school** /'praɪməri ˌsku:l/ Noun

in Britain, a *primary school* is a school for children up to the age of 11. After *primary school*, children usually go to a secondary school until they are 17 or 18. These schools provide primary education and secondary education

*she loved all her teachers at primary school | at primary school we had to do a spelling test every week*

- *école primaire*

**product** /'prɒdʌkt/ Noun

a *product* is something that is made and sold

*we're working on a new product | all their products are good quality*

Verb: *produce* | Noun: *production*

- *produit*

**project** /'prɒdʒekt/ Noun

a *project* is a big piece of work that you plan and do over a long period of time

*I'm working on a project for my class | a government project to help the environment*

- *projet*

**research** /rɪ'sɜː(r)tʃ/ Noun uncount

if you do *research*, you study a subject in detail to find new information about it

Collocates: *do research (into something)*

*I'm doing some research into why people forget things | some new research into the causes of cancer*

Verb: *research* | Noun: *researcher*

- *recherche*

**run** /rʌn/ Verb

if you *run* something, you are in control of it

*I run my own company | we run a small restaurant in London*

- *diriger*

**sales** /seɪlz/ Noun

*sales* is the work involved in selling things. A company's *sales* are the amount of goods it sells in a particular period of time

*he's a sales manager for a car company | sales increased by 10% over the last year*

- *ventes*

**scientist** /'saɪəntɪst/ Noun

a *scientist* is someone whose job involves studying subjects such as physics, chemistry, or biology

*scientists are worried about global warming | two Russian scientists discovered a new material called "graphene"*

Noun: *science* | Adjective: *scientific*

- *scientifique*

**soldier** /'səʊldʒə(r)/ Noun

a *soldier* is someone who belongs to an army and who has to fight when there is a war

*six soldiers were killed in the attack | a soldier in uniform*

- *soldat*

**studio** /'stju:diəʊ/ Noun

a *studio* is a room or building where an artist or photographer works

*I run my own studio | the photograph was taken in a studio*

- *atelier*

**temporary** /'temp(ə)rəri/ Adjective

if something is *temporary*, it only lasts for a limited period of time

*a temporary job | living in temporary accommodation | a temporary address*

- *temporaire*

**training** /'treɪnɪŋ/ Noun uncount

*training* is teaching or learning the skills that are needed to do a job

Collocates: a training course | by training

*I'm going on a training course next week | you get three weeks of training before you start work*

- *formation*

**work experience** /wɜ:(r)k ɪk'spɪəriəns/ Noun uncount

*work experience* is a period of time that a student spends working without pay for a company in order to learn about it, instead of being at school or college

*I'm doing work experience in a law firm this week | do as much work experience as you can over the summer*

- *expérience professionnelle*

**STUDENT'S BOOK PAGES 10–11****agree** /ə'gri:/ Verb

if you *agree* something with someone, you both decide what you want and say that it is what you both think

Collocates: agree to do something

*Gareth Bale has agreed a new contract with the club | we agreed to make a video of the event*

Noun: *agreement*

- *être d'accord avec*

**apply** /ə'plai/ Verb

if you *apply* for something such as a job, you write to say that you want to have it

Collocates: apply for something

*you should start applying for jobs before you leave university | I applied for a grant to study physics at Oxford*

Noun: *application*

Collocates: a job application | an application form

- *faire une demande*

**appointment** /ə'pɔɪntmənt/ Noun

an *appointment* is an arrangement to meet someone at a particular time

Collocates: make an appointment | keep an appointment  
*I've got an appointment with the dentist at 3 o'clock | I called the doctor to make an appointment*

- *rendez-vous*

**arrange** /ə'reɪndʒ/ Verb

if you *arrange* a meeting with someone, you agree a time and place when you will meet someone

Collocates: arrange to do something

*I arranged to have lunch with Jeremy next week | can you arrange a meeting for me with the sales manager?*

- *organiser*

**attend** /ə'tend/ Verb

if you *attend* an event, you go to it and are present there

Collocates: attend a meeting/conference | attend college/school/university

*all employees have to attend the training session | the ceremony was attended by nearly 200 people*

- *participer à*

**balance** /'bæləns/ Noun

if there is a *balance* between two things, there is not too much of either of them and they exist together very well

Collocates: strike a balance

*do you have a good balance between work and relaxation? | I'm trying to strike a balance between explaining what I feel and listening to others*

Verb: *balance* | Adjective: *balanced*

- *équilibre*

**basic** /'beɪsɪk/ Adjective

something that is *basic* includes the most important things but not smaller or more complicated details

*we did our basic training in the first week | if you buy the basic model, it will cost just \$50 | the basic idea is very simple*

- *élémentaire*

**break** /breɪk/ Noun

when you are at work, a *break* is a time when you stop working and relax for a short while before starting to work again

Collocates: a lunch/tea/coffee break | a short/long break

*I usually take a break at about 11 | I had to go to the bank during my lunch break*

- *pause*

**busy** /'bɪzi/ Adjective

if you are *busy*, you have a lot of things that you are doing and you do not have time to relax. If a place is *busy*, there are a lot of people there

*I've had a very busy week | the restaurant gets very busy on Friday evenings*

- occupé

**contract** /'kɒntrækt/ Noun

a *contract* is an official, legal agreement between people

Collocates: sign a contract | break a contract | renew a contract

*my contract ends next month | have you signed the contract yet?*

- contrat

**delay** /dɪ'leɪ/ Verb

if you *delay* doing something, or delay something, you do it or make it happen later than it was planned to happen

Collocates: delay doing something

*I often delay doing things I don't enjoy | a storm delayed our departure from Southampton*

Noun: *delay*

Collocates: without delay

*because of the accident, there were long traffic delays*

- retarder

**diary** /'daɪəri/ Noun

a *diary* is a book which has a space for every day of the year. You use it to record the date and time of things you need to do, or to write down the interesting things that happen to you every day

Collocates: keep a diary

*I wrote the date for our meeting in my diary | during her year in France, she kept a diary (wrote down what happened every day)*

- agenda

**efficient** /ɪ'fɪʃ(ə)nt/ Adjective

if something is *efficient*, it works well, without any problems, and without wasting energy

*the staff are friendly and efficient | the new machines are more efficient (they use less energy)*

Adverb: *efficiently* | Noun: *efficiency*

*it may also improve the efficiency of the system*

- efficace

**efficiently** /ɪ'fɪʃ(ə)ntli/ Adverb

if something happens or is done *efficiently*, it happens or is done well and without wasting any time or money

*I don't work very efficiently early in the morning | a rail system that can efficiently transport thousands of people every day*

Adjective: *efficient* | Noun: *efficiency*

*a very efficient way of managing your time*

- efficacement

**employ** /ɪm'plɔɪ/ Verb

if a company *employs* people, it pays them to work there

*we employ 30 staff at our Birmingham office | he was employed as a cleaner*

Noun: *employer* | Noun: *employee* | Noun: *employment*

*my employer gives us four weeks holiday a year*

- employer

**end** /end/ Verb

if something *ends*, it stops

*my contract ends on Friday | how does the film end? (what finally happens?)*

Noun: *end* | Noun: *ending*

*I have to hand in my project by the end of the week*

- se terminer

**event** /ɪ'vent/ Noun

an *event* is something that happens, usually because it has been arranged, like a concert or a sports match

*we have a lot of social events next week | tonight's event will start at 7:30*

- événement

**hardly** /'hɑ:(r)dli/ Adverb

if you *hardly* do something, you almost do not do it all

*I hardly ever go to London | my grandparents live in Scotland, so I hardly see them*

- à peine

**interview** /'ɪntə(r),vjʊ:/ Noun

an *interview* is a meeting where someone who has asked for a job answers questions from the person or group of people who might give them a job

Collocates: a job interview | an interview for something

*I had a job interview yesterday | they've invited me for interview next week*

Verb: *interview* | Noun: *interviewer* | Noun: *interviewee*

Collocates: interview someone for something

- entretien

**launch** /lɔ:ntʃ/ Verb

if you *launch* a new product, book, website, etc., you let a lot of people know that it is starting to exist so that they can buy it or make use of it

*we're launching a new product next month | they've launched a new range of laptop computers*

Noun: *launch*

*60 journalists turned up for the book launch*

- lancer

**list** /lɪst/ Noun

a *list* is a number of words or names that you write down one below the other

*I made a list of things I needed to do | what's the first item on the list?*

- *liste*

**main** /meɪn/ Adjective

the *main* part of something is the biggest or most important part of it

*my main priority is to pass my exams | there are two main reasons for this decision*

Adverb: *mainly*

*I mainly listen to pop music, but I like electronic music too*

- *principal*

**manage** /'mænɪdʒ/ Verb

if you *manage* your time or money well, you succeed in using it in a good way and do not waste any of it

*you should try and manage your time better | he found it difficult to manage his money when he first got a job*

Noun: *management*

*time management is an important skill*

- *gérer*

**part-time** /pɑ:(r)t 'taɪm/ Adjective

if you have a *part-time* job, you work for only part of a week

*I had to take a part-time job when I was a student | the company employs a lot of part-time staff*

Adverb: *part time*

*I've been working part time at the sports shop*

- *à temps partiel*

**presentation** /,prez(ə)n'teɪʃ(ə)n/ Noun

if you give a *presentation*, you talk about a particular subject in front of a group of people, for example, at a conference or in class

*I'm giving a presentation at the conference on Friday | her presentation was about English grammar*

Verb: *present* | Noun: *presenter*

- *présentation*

**priority** /praɪ'brɪti/ Noun

your *priority* is the most important thing that you need to do

*what's your main priority for this week? | my priorities are to finish my degree course and to get a job*

- *priorité*

**quiet** /'kwaɪət/ Adjective

if things are *quiet*, or if you have a *quiet* period of time, not very much is happening and there is not much activity

*I've had a very quiet week at work | I go to the supermarket on Tuesday mornings when it's quiet*

- *calme*

**relaxation** /,rɪ:læks'eɪʃ(ə)n/ Noun uncount

if you *relax*, you become calm because you are not working or worried about anything. *Relaxation* is spending your time relaxing

*do you have a good balance between work and relaxation? | I play tennis for relaxation and enjoyment*

Verb: *relax* | Adjective: *relaxing*

- *relaxation*

**rush** /rʌʃ/ Verb

if you *rush*, you do something or go somewhere quickly because you are in a hurry

Collocates: *rush to do something | rush someone or something somewhere*

*I often need to rush to finish things | he rushed to get off the train*

Noun: *rush*

Collocates: *be in a rush*

*I'm in a rush (I don't have much time)*

- *se précipiter*

**session** /'seɪʃ(ə)n/ Noun

a *session* is a period of time during which a class or meeting takes place

Collocates: *a training session*

*there's another training session on Friday | each session lasts about 45 minutes*

- *séance*

**sign** /saɪn/ Verb

if you *sign* a letter or document, you write your name on it in order to show that you wrote it or agree with what it says. Your signature is your name written in the way that you always write it on documents

*I finally signed the contract with World Mail | I forgot to sign the cheque | can you sign your name here, please?*

Noun: *signature*

*her signature was on the bottom of the letter*

- *signer*

**sort out** /,sɔ:(r)t 'aʊt/ Phrasal verb

if you *sort something out*, you deal with it so that it is no longer untidy or a problem

*you need to sort out your room. It's a mess | We had a big argument, but we've sorted it out now and we're friends again*

- *ranger*

**staff** /stɑ:f/ Noun uncount

the *staff* of a company, shop, etc. are the people who work there

*the company has more than 200 staff | I talked to a member of staff (one of the staff)*

• personnel

**stay up** /steɪ ʌp/ Phrasal verb

if you *stay up*, you stay awake for longer than usual and go to bed later than you usually do

*I sometimes stay up late to finish things | we stayed up till 3 o'clock to watch the football from Japan*

• veiller

**well-paid** /wel 'peɪd/ Adjective

if you are *well paid*, or if you have a *well-paid* job, you receive a lot of money for doing it

*she had a very well-paid job in Paris | my brother is well paid and can afford three holidays a year*

Opposite – Adjective: *low-paid*

*people in low-paid jobs can't afford to live in the city*

• bien payé

## STUDENT'S BOOK PAGES 12–13

**advertisement** /əd'vɜ:(r)tɪsmənt/ Noun

an *advertisement* is an announcement in a newspaper or magazine saying that a job or opportunity is available and asking people to apply. The short forms *advert* and *ad* are often used, and *advertisements* for jobs are often called *job ads*

*I saw an advertisement for VSO and applied for it | over 200 people replied to the advertisement*

Verb: *advertise*

Collocates: *advertise for someone*

• publicité

**advise** /əd'vaɪz/ Verb

if you *advise* someone, you help them by making suggestions about what they should do or by giving them an expert opinion about something

Collocates: *advise someone on something*

*I advise local doctors on how to improve services | she was responsible for advising customers on home security*

Verb: *advise* | Noun: *adviser*

Collocates: *take someone's advice | give someone advice*

*I decided to take her advice*

• conseiller

**attitude** /'ætɪ,tju:d/ Noun

your *attitude* is how you think and feel about something

*it's important to have a positive attitude towards your exams | this is a sign that social attitudes are changing*

• attitude

**build** /bɪld/ Verb

to *build* something means to make it by putting lots of things together. To *build* a nation, a company, an organisation, etc. means to make it start to exist over a period of time

*women have played an important part in building the nation | the company was built up in the 1890s | we plan to build the finest educational institution in the country*

• bâtir

**distribution** /,dɪstrɪ'bju:ʃ(ə)n/ Noun uncount

the *distribution* of something is the work involved in sending it out to a number of different places

*I'm organising the European distribution of a new German film | the company is responsible for the production and distribution of electricity in the country*

Verb: *distribute*

• distribution

**energy** /'enə(r)dʒi/ Noun uncount

if you have *energy*, you feel strong and able to do things without getting tired

*children have got so much energy! | he's full of energy*

Adjective: *energetic*

• énergie

**exploit** /ɪk'splɔɪt/ Verb

to *exploit* someone means to treat them very unfairly, for example by making them work too hard or not paying them enough money

*I think the company is exploiting me | children are exploited in many parts of the world*

Noun: *exploitation*

*they are calling for an end to the exploitation of foreign workers*

• exploiter

**fight** /faɪt/ Verb

if you *fight* for something you believe you should have, you try very hard and do everything that you can in order to get it

Collocates: *fight for something | fight to have something*

*an organisation that's fighting for women's rights | she fought to have her son released from prison*

Noun: *fight*

Collocates: *a fight for something*

*we will never give up the fight for equal rights*

• se battre

**fixed** /fɪkst/ Adjective

something that is *fixed* stays the same and cannot be changed

*the job comes with a fixed salary | rent is one of the company's fixed costs*

• fixe

**install** /ɪn'stɔ:l/ Verb

to *install* something means to put it in place and make it work

*we need someone to install our new kitchen | they've installed security cameras in the car park*

Noun: *installation*

*the installation of a new security system*

- *installer*

**nation** /'neɪʃ(ə)n/ Noun

a *nation* is a country

*one of the world's poorest nations | our nation is over a thousand years old*

Adjective: *national*

- *nation*

**negotiate** /nɪ'gəʊʃieɪt/ Verb

to *negotiate* means to talk about something until you can agree with someone what you will both do or accept

Collocates: *negotiate with someone*

*we are negotiating a big deal with a Chinese TV company | we need to negotiate a price*

Noun: *negotiation*

*the employers are refusing to enter into negotiations with the workers*

- *négociier*

**offer** /'ɒfə(r)/ Verb

if you *offer* someone something such as a job or an opportunity, you tell them that they can have it if they want it

*they offered me the job | my boss offered me the chance to work in the New York office for a year*

Noun: *offer*

*thank you for your generous offer of help*

- *offrir*

**organise** /'ɔ:(r)gənəɪz/ Verb

if you *organise* something, you plan it and make all the arrangements for it to happen

*I'm organising a big party for my parents' wedding anniversary | the conference was organised by the local university*

Adjective: *organised* | Noun: *organiser* | Noun: *organisation*

*there is organised entertainment in the evenings*

- *organiser*

**WORD FAMILIES**

One way to improve your English is to learn the different forms of a new word.

*She helped **organise** the tennis tournament.* (verb)

*An **organised** boat trip to the islands.* (adjective)

***Organisers** apologised when the speaker did not arrive.* (noun – person)

*Can I help with the **organisation** of the party?* (noun – activity)

The VB often gives information on other forms. Remember to notice and learn collocations of each form in the word family.

**pension** /'penʃ(ə)n/ Noun

a *pension* is money that a government or company pays to someone regularly when they do not work any more because they are old

Collocates: *a state pension | a private pension | draw a pension*

*I'll receive a small pension when I retire | everyone gets the state pension (from the government)*

- *retraite*

**positive** /'pɒzətɪv/ Adjective

if you are *positive* about something, you believe you are in a good situation and that you will succeed, and you do not think about any bad possibilities

*everyone who works here has a really positive attitude | if you take a positive approach to your exams you'll be fine*

Adverb: *positively* || Opposite – Adjective: *negative*

*I had to start thinking positively, otherwise I was going to fail*

- *positif*

**right** /raɪt/ Noun

people's *rights* are all the things they should legally or morally be allowed to have or do

*campaigning for basic human rights | the police don't have the right to come into your house | everyone has the right to a fair trial*

- *droit*

**role** /rəʊl/ Noun

your *role* is the purpose or position that you have in a particular situation

Collocates: *play a role | an important role*

*what's your role in the company? | money played a major role in my decision*

- *rôle*

**salary** /'sæləri/ Noun

your *salary* is the money that you receive each month for doing your job

*they pay us a fixed salary | he gets a good salary*

- *salaire*

**strike** /straɪk/ Noun

if there is a *strike*, people refuse to work because they want their employer to make changes, such as increase their pay or improve their conditions

Collocates: go on strike | come out on strike

*we're thinking of going on strike if they don't agree to our demands | a strike over pay and working conditions*

Verb: *strike* | Noun: *striker*

*teachers are threatening to strike over pay*

• grève

---

**survive** /sə(r)'vaɪv/ Verb

if you *survive*, you manage to continue living, even in difficult conditions

*you can't survive for long in the desert | it's difficult to survive on so little money | no one survived the crash (they all died)*

Noun: *survival* | Noun: *survivor*

*his survival depends on finding enough money for the operation*

• survivre

---

**voluntary** /'vɒlənt(ə)ri/ Adjective

if a job or activity is *voluntary*, you do it because you want to and you do not get paid for it

*I spent a year doing voluntary work in China | she does a lot of voluntary work at weekends*

Verb: *volunteer* | Noun: *volunteer*

Collocates: volunteer for something | volunteer to do something

*I volunteered to help at the soup kitchen (providing food for people who have no home)*

• bénévole

---

**without** /wɪð'aʊt/ Preposition

if you do *without* something, or live *without* it, you are able to continue even though you do not have it. If you can't do *without* it or can't live *without* it, it is absolutely necessary for you

*I can't live without pay for another year! | we'll just have to do without the car until it's fixed*

• sans

---

# 2 SHOPS

## STUDENT'S BOOK PAGES 16–17

### comfortable /'kʌmfətəb(ə)l/ Adjective

if you are *comfortable*, you feel relaxed and happy because your body is in a good position

*our new sofa's really comfortable | are you comfortable sitting there?*

Noun: *comfort* | Adverb: *comfortably*

*I like to travel in comfort*

#### • comfortable

### complicated /'kɒmplɪˌkeɪtɪd/ Adjective

something that is *complicated* is difficult to understand or use because it has a lot of different parts

*it's really complicated to use and the instructions aren't very helpful | the situation is quite complicated*

#### • compliqué

### cool /ku:l/ Adjective

if you say that something is *cool*, you mean that you really like it because it is very modern or fashionable. If you say that a person is *cool*, you admire them because they are fashionable

*my new laptop is so cool | what a cool bike | the new maths teacher is really cool*

#### • génial

### dark /dɑ:(r)k/ Adjective

*dark* colours are not bright because they are closer to black than they are to white

*she has long dark hair and green eyes | the paint will look darker after it dries*

Opposite – Adjective: *light*

*he wore dark trousers and a light shirt*

#### • sombre

### design /dɪ'zaɪn/ Noun

the *design* of something is the way it has been put together and the way that it looks

*the design of the phone is very simple | your shirt is a really nice design*

Verb: *design* | Noun: *designer*

#### • design

### design /dɪ'zaɪn/ Verb

if you *design* something, you have the idea for it and decide what it will look like and how it should be made. You can refer to the way something looks as its *design*

*Jonathan I've designed the original iPhone | all our products are designed and made in the UK*

Noun: *design* | Noun: *designer*

#### • concevoir

### fit /fɪt/ Verb

if clothes *fit* you, they are the right size for your body

*my gloves look nice, but they don't actually fit | I didn't find anything that fitted me in the shop*

Noun: *fit*

Collocates: a good fit

*the boots were such a good fit*

#### • aller

### follow /'fɒləʊ/ Verb

if you *follow* an instruction or someone's advice, you do what someone suggests or tells you to do

*the instructions are very difficult to follow | I decided to follow her advice | we were only following orders*

#### • suivre

### function /'fʌŋkʃ(ə)n/ Noun

the *function* of something is its main purpose or the job that it is meant to do. The *functions* a machine has are all the different things it can do

*it's a really good camera with a lot of different functions | the main function of the department is to find new employees*

#### • fonction

### instructions /ɪn'strʌkʃ(ə)nz/ Noun plural

*instructions* are a detailed description of how to do something, for example, how to use a machine such as a dishwasher

Collocates: follow instructions

*the instructions are very difficult to follow | the instructions were in 12 different languages, but not English!*

#### • instructions

### jewellery /'dʒu:əlri/ Noun uncount

*jewellery* is things like rings, earrings, and necklaces, often made from metal, that people wear because they look nice

*my friend makes silver jewellery | burglars stole £20,000 worth of jewellery*

Noun: *jeweller*

#### • bijou

### last /lɑ:st/ Verb

if something *lasts* for a particular length of time, it continues to exist for that time

*I had a pair of shoes that lasted six years | the film lasts over three hours | their relationship didn't last very long*

#### • durer

**lie** /laɪ/ Verb

if you *lie* or *lie down*, your body is flat and your head is on the same level as your feet, for example when you are in bed

Collocates: lie down | lie on something

*the sofa's nice and big, so you can lie on it too | she lay down on the bed and fell asleep | I'm really tired; I'm just going to lie down for a few minutes*

• se coucher

**light** /laɪt/ Adjective

something that is *light* doesn't weigh very much, and isn't heavy

*my new laptop is really light and easy to carry around | your bag is much lighter than mine*

Opposite – Adjective: *heavy*

*it's too heavy to lift*

• léger

**material** /mə'tɪəriəl/ Noun

*material* is cloth such as wool or cotton that is used for making clothes, curtains, etc. *Material* is also any hard stuff such as wood or plastic

*I bought some material for a new dress | what material are those curtains made out of?*

• tissu

**pair** /peə(r)/ Noun

a *pair* of something is two things that are the same and that are used together, for example, shoes, earrings, or socks. You also talk about a *pair* of glasses, trousers, shorts, etc. when something is made of two parts that are the same and which are joined together

*a pair of leather shoes | I bought a pair of jeans*

• paire

**quality** /'kwɒləti/ Noun

the *quality* of something is how good it is and how well it is made

*they're really good quality and they'll last for years | you can feel the quality of this wool*

• qualité

**ring** /rɪŋ/ Noun

a *ring* is a circle of metal or other hard stuff that someone wears on their finger as jewellery

*I love your ring. Where did you get it? | a gold ring*

• bague

**second-hand** /ˌsekənd 'hænd/ Adjective

something that is *second-hand* is not new and belonged to someone else before you bought it

*I bought a second-hand car | second-hand shop (that sells second-hand goods)*

Adverb: *second-hand*

*have you ever bought anything second-hand?*

• seconde main

**smart** /sma:(r)t/ Adjective

*smart* clothes are clean and nice. You can also say that a person is *smart* if they are wearing clean, nice clothes

*I had to buy some smart trousers for work | you should wear something smart | you look very smart today*

• élégant

**suit** /su:t/ Verb

if something such as your clothes *suit* you, they make you look good

*yellow doesn't suit me | your new hairstyle really suits you*

• aller à

## WORDS WITH TWO MEANINGS

Many words in English have more than one meaning. For example:

*That shirt really **suits** you.* (It makes you look nice)

*I usually wear a **suit** to work.* (jacket and trousers)

*The light's not very **bright**.* (strong and easy to see)

*Her son's very **bright**.* (intelligent)

*I saw her **last** week.* (most recent)

*The clothes they make don't **last** long. They're very poor quality.* (continue for a time)

Words appear more than once in the VB when there is a different meaning. They will have different collocations!

**thick** /θɪk/ Adjective

something that is *thick* is not thin. *Thick* clothes are made of heavy material and will keep you warm

*a pair of thick socks | the walls are very thick | she's got lovely thick hair*

• épais

**unique** /ju:'ni:k/ Adjective

if something is *unique*, there is only one of it, and there is nothing else that is the same

*this is a unique opportunity | the band had a unique style of music | I met a lot of interesting and unique people*

• unique

**warm** /wɔ:(r)m/ Adjective

if you are *warm*, you are slightly hot in a pleasant way. *Warm* weather is quite hot

*I bought a thick coat to keep me warm in the cold weather | I had a nice warm bath | the weather was quite warm*

• chaud

## STUDENT'S BOOK PAGES 18–19

**annoying** /ə'noɪŋ/ Adjective

something that is *annoying* makes you a little bit angry

*the website has too many annoying ads on it | her little brother was a very annoying child*

Verb: *annoy* | Adjective: *annoyed*

*the music from next door annoyed me all afternoon*

• ennuyeux

**bargain** /'bɑ:(r)gɪn/ Noun

a *bargain* is something you get for a lower price than is normal

*I got it for £5 – it was a bargain | our shop is full of bargains*

- *affaire*

**bid** /bɪd/ Verb

if you *bid* for something, you say how much you are willing to pay for it, and you succeed in buying it if no one else *bids* a higher price

*I bid £20 for it on eBay and won | how much did you bid for it?*

Noun: *bid* | Noun: *bidder*

*the winning bid was £35*

- *faire une offre*

**box** /bɒks/ Noun

a *box* is a container with hard sides and a top that is used to keep things in

*when I took it out of the box, I saw that it was damaged | a cardboard box*

- *boite*

**concert** /'kɒnsə(r)t/ Noun

a *concert* is a public performance in which people play music

*my wife took me to a concert for my 40th birthday | a lot of people are travelling to Wembley for the big concert*

- *concert*

**damaged** /'dæmɪdʒd/ Adjective

something that is *damaged* is broken in some way

*I took it back to the shop because it was damaged | some buildings were badly damaged in the storm*

Verb: *damage* | Noun: *damage*

*smoking can damage your health*

- *endommagé*

**deliver** /dɪ'lɪvə(r)/ Verb

to *deliver* something means to take it somewhere

*we deliver vegetables to all the restaurants in the town | can you deliver at weekends? | the postman delivered three letters and a parcel*

Noun: *delivery*

- *livrer*

**delivery** /dɪ'lɪv(ə)ri/ Noun

*delivery* is the act of taking things such as goods or letters to a place

*we make daily deliveries | send it by express delivery (very quick)*

Verb: *deliver*

- *livraison*

**drop** /drɒp/ Verb

if you *drop* something, you let go of it and it falls to the ground

*be careful you don't drop that plate | she dropped her gloves on the floor*

- *laisser tomber*

**fact** /fækt/ Noun

a *fact* is a piece of information which is true

*some of these facts were really interesting | the fact is that he's been in prison for the last year*

Adjective: *factual*

- *fait*

**fault** /fɔ:lt/ Noun uncount

if a bad situation or a mistake is your *fault*, you are responsible for causing it. When this happens, you can also say that you are *at fault*

Collocates: *be at fault*

*it was my own fault – I didn't check the delivery fee | it was an unfortunate accident, but the school was not at fault*

- *faute*

**fee** /fi:/ Noun

a *fee* is the amount of money you have to pay for a particular service

Collocates: *pay a fee | charge a fee*

*there's no delivery fee on orders over £20 | the fees are so high that I couldn't afford to study there*

- *frais*

**get back** /,get 'bæk/ Phrasal verb

if you *get* something *back*, someone returns it to you after they have had it for a while

*I got my money back from the shop | I lent her my skateboard and never got it back*

- *recupérer*

**globally** /'glɔ:ɒb(ə)li/ Adverb

the world is sometimes referred to as a *globe* (something in the shape of a ball). Activities that happen all over the world are *global*, or happen *globally*. The way everything in the world is becoming connected, for example because of the Internet and travel, is called *globalisation*

*globally, we now buy 22% of everything we need online | Nike is a globally recognised brand*

Adjective: *global* | Noun: *globalisation*

- *mondialement*

**inspire** /ɪn'spaɪə(r)/ Verb

if you *inspire* someone, you make them believe in something very strongly, especially in their own ability to achieve things

*my English teacher really inspired me | her passion inspires both students and other teachers*

Adjective: *inspiring*

*he was an inspiring leader*

- *inspirer*

**online** /'ɒnlaɪn/ Adverb

if you buy something *online*, you buy it over the Internet

*I always buy my train tickets online | several sites offering to do people's homework have appeared online*

Adjective: *online*

*online shopping*

- *en ligne*

**order** /'ɔ:(r)də(r)/ Verb

if you *order* something, you ask for it to be sent to you or made ready for you

*I ordered a new washing machine last week | I'd like to order a taxi to the station*

Noun: *order*

*my order was delivered three days late*

- *commander*

**recommend** /,rɛkə'mend/ Verb

if you *recommend* something, you tell someone that it is good and that they should get one or do it

*a friend of mine recommended a new online shop | I can strongly recommend swimming in the sea*

Noun: *recommendation*

Collocates: on someone's recommendation

*we booked the Bristol Hotel on my brother's recommendation (because he recommended it)*

- *recommander*

**reduced** /rɪ'dju:st/ Adjective

if an amount is *reduced*, it has been made smaller

*it was only £50, reduced from £99 | the hotel offered us a reduced price of £65 a night instead of £80*

Verb: *reduce* | Noun: *reduction*

Collocates: a reduction in something | a reduction of something

*the government has promised to reduce unemployment*

- *réduit*

**reliable** /rɪ'laɪəb(ə)l/ Adjective

if something is *reliable*, you can trust it and know that it will be good every time you need it. If someone is *reliable*, you can trust them and depend on them

*their delivery service was very reliable | she's a very reliable babysitter*

Noun: *reliability* || Opposite – Adjective: *unreliable*

*my phone battery is really unreliable*

- *fiable*

**return** /rɪ'tɜ:(r)n/ Verb

if you *return* something that you have bought, you take it back or send it back to the shop where you bought it because you are not satisfied with it

*women return more than 20% of the clothes they buy online | you cannot return items more than 30 days after you bought them*

- *retourner*

**sale** /seɪl/ Noun

a *sale* is an event when a shop sells its goods more cheaply than usual for a period of time

*I bought it in a sale | I go to the sales in Oxford Street every January (when lots of shops have a sale)*

- *solde*

**selection** /sɪ'lekʃ(ə)n/ Noun

a *selection* is a group of things that you can choose from

Collocates: a good/wide selection | a selection of something

*they had a really wide selection of armchairs | your body needs a wide selection of foods to stay healthy*

- *sélection*

**site** /saɪt/ Noun

a *site* is a place where something is or where something happens. On the Internet, a *site* is a collection of pages where information is available

Collocates: a web site

*do you have any favourite sites for shopping? | he made a lot of money when he sold a social networking site to Yahoo!*

- *site*

**size** /saɪz/ Noun

the *size* of something is how big or small it is. If a piece of clothing is your *size*, it fits you. If it is the wrong *size*, it is too big or too small and does not fit you

*they had lots of shirts in my size | the trousers they sent me were the wrong size*

- *taille*

**stock** /stɒk/ Noun uncount

the *stock* of a shop or company is the amount of goods it has that are available and ready to be sold or sent out to customers

Collocates: in stock | out of stock

*the camera I wanted was out of stock (there were no more available to buy) | everything on the list is in stock and is immediately available*

Verb: *stock*

- stock

**surprising** /sə(r)'praɪzɪŋ/ Adjective

if something is *surprising*, you didn't expect it

*that was a very surprising fact | the article came to a surprising conclusion*

Adjective: *surprised* | Adverb: *surprisingly* | Verb: *surprise*

*I was quite surprised when she said she was leaving*

- surprenant

**STUDENT'S BOOK PAGES 20–21**

**bright** /braɪt/ Adjective

*bright* colours are light and strong, not dark

*have you got any paint that's a bit brighter? | she wears a lot of bright colours*

- vif

**button** /'bʌt(ə)n/ Noun

a *button* is a small round thing on clothes. You put a *button* through a hole to fasten the clothes

*the top button on my shirt has come loose | a smart shirt with small white buttons*

- bouton

**grow into** /,grəʊ 'ɪntuː/ Phrasal verb

when a child *grows into* clothes, he or she gets bigger so that the clothes which were too big are now the right size. When a child *grows out of* clothes, he or she gets bigger and the clothes no longer fit properly

*it's a bit too big now, but you'll soon grow into it | by the time he was 13, he'd grown into his father's old coat*

- bientôt pouvoir mettre

**lifetime** /'laɪf,tʌɪm/ Noun

your *lifetime* is the period of time during which you are alive. If something will last a *lifetime*, it will last a very long time

*they're very well made and they'll last you a lifetime | the Internet is the greatest invention in my lifetime*

- durée de vie

**loose** /luːs/ Adjective

something that is *loose* is not firmly fixed in place. *Loose* clothes are big and don't fit your body tightly

*the top button on my shirt is loose | the handle on my suitcase has come loose*

- lâche

**make** /meɪk/ Verb

if you *make* someone do something they do not want to do, you tell them they have to do it and they cannot refuse

Collocates: make someone do something

*did your mum ever make you wear something you didn't like? | he wants me to stay in tonight, but he can't make me | we were made to stand outside in the rain until we said sorry*

- forcer à

**occasion** /ə'keɪʒ(ə)n/ Noun

an *occasion* is a time when something happens

*when did you last buy a present, and what was the occasion? | I met him on several occasions*

- occasion

**plain** /pleɪn/ Adjective

something that is *plain* is simple, with no unnecessary parts or decoration

*I put on a plain white shirt | the furniture was all very plain | a piece of plain paper (with no lines on it)*

- simple

**practical** /'præktɪk(ə)l/ Adjective

something that is *practical* is useful and easy to use

*have you got something more practical that will fit in the car? | it's a cheap and practical family car*

- pratique

**present** /'prez(ə)nt/ Noun

a *present* is something you give to someone, for example when it is their birthday or at Christmas

*I need to buy a present for my dad's birthday | the Christmas presents were all beautifully wrapped*

- cadeau

**queue** /kjuː/ Noun

a *queue* is a line of people who are waiting for something

Collocates: stand/wait in a queue

*there was an enormous queue outside the cinema | is this the end of the queue?*

Verb: *queue*

Collocates: queue for something | queue to do something

- queue

**receipt** /rɪ'si:t/ Noun

a *receipt* is a piece of paper from a shop or an email from an online shop that shows where and when you bought something, and proves that you have paid

*you need to keep your receipt | can I have a receipt, please?*

- reçu

**shoulder** /'ʃəʊldə(r)/ Noun

your *shoulders* are the two parts of your body that start at the bottom of your neck and go out on either side

*the coat is a bit tight round my shoulders | he put his arm around her shoulder*

- épaule

**suitable** /'su:təb(ə)/ Adjective

if something is *suitable*, it is right for a particular situation

*this smaller one might be more suitable | the film isn't suitable for young children | it's going to be cold, so make sure to bring suitable clothes*

- approprié

**take back** /,teɪk 'bæk/ Phrasal verb

if you *take something back* to the shop where you bought it, you return it because you are not satisfied with it

*when was the last time you took something back to a shop? | every time I buy him some clothes, he takes them back*

- rapporter

**tight** /taɪt/ Adjective

if your clothes are *tight*, they fit too close to your body and are not quite big enough

*the coat is a bit tight round my shoulders | these jeans are too tight*

Opposite – Adjective: *loose*

*I put on a loose shirt and a pair of jeans*

- serré

**top of the range** /,tɒp əv ðə 'reɪndʒ/ Phrase

something that is *top of the range* is the best or most expensive of its kind that is available

*her furniture was top of the range | a top-of-the-range smartphone*

- haut de gamme

**typical** /'tɪpɪk(ə)/ Adjective

a situation that is *typical* is normal and has all the same features as it usually does. People sometimes say “*typical!*” to mean that they were expecting something bad to happen

*It's typical! The service is always bad here | it was a typical English summer, with rain every week*

- typique

**wrap** /ræp/ Verb

to *wrap* something means to put paper around it to protect it, or because you want to give it as a present

*choose the paper and I'll wrap it for you | I wrapped it in gold paper*

Adjective: *wrapped*

*would you like it wrapped?*

- enveloppeur

---

**STUDENT'S BOOK PAGES 22–23**

---

**allow** /ə'laʊ/ Verb

if you *allow* someone to do something, you let them do it by giving them permission

Collocates: allow someone to do something

*you should allow children to take some risks | we're not allowed to take phones into class*

- permettre

**protect** /prə'tekt/ Verb

if you *protect* someone or something, you keep them safe and prevent them from being hurt or damaged

Collocates: protect someone from/against something

*this should protect you from catching the disease | how can we help protect the environment?*

Noun: *protection*

Collocates: protection against/from something

*a healthy diet could offer protection against cancer*

- protéger

**risk** /rɪsk/ Verb

if you *risk* something, you put it in a situation where it might be damaged, destroyed, or lost

Collocates: risk something to do something | risk doing something

*I can't risk letting him see me here | he has risked everything he owns*

Noun: *risk* | Adjective: *risky*

Collocates: take a risk

*young drivers often take risks*

- risquer

**scare** /skeə(r)/ Verb

to *scare* someone means to make them afraid because they think something bad is going to happen

*don't shout like that. It really scares me | we dressed up like ghosts to try and scare my little sister*

Adjective: *scared* | Adjective: *scary*

*I thought I heard someone downstairs and got really scared*

- effrayer

# 3 GETTING THERE

## STUDENT'S BOOK PAGES 26–27

### council /'kaʊns(ə)/ Noun

a *council* is an organisation that is responsible for the local government in an area

Collocates: a local council | a town council

*the local council is responsible for the schools | the town council meets twice a month*

- conseil

### crime /kraɪm/ Noun

*crime* is activity that is against the law. A *crime* is an action that someone does that is against the law

Collocates: commit a crime | the crime rate | a serious crime

*he did not commit this crime by himself | horse stealing is a serious crime*

Adjective: *criminal* | Noun: *criminal*

*he's got a criminal record (he has done things that were against the law)*

- crime

### crossing /'krɒsɪŋ/ Noun

a *crossing* is a place where you can walk from one side of a road to the other, or from one side of a railway line to the other. A *crossing* is also a place where you can go from one country into another

Collocates: a pedestrian crossing | a level crossing | a border crossing

*there's a crossing outside the bank | the traffic is very fast along here, so use the pedestrian crossing*

Verb: *cross*

- passage piéton

### crossroads /'krɒs,rəʊdz/ Noun

a *crossroads* is a place where two roads go across each other

*there was a nasty crash at the crossroads | go straight on at the crossroads*

- croisement

### directly /dɪ'rek(t)li/ Adverb

if something is *directly* above, opposite, or below something, it is in exactly that place and not to one side

*it's directly opposite the bookshop | their flat is directly above ours, and we can hear them walking around*

- directement

### get off /,get 'ɒf/ Phrasal verb

if you *get off* a bus or train, you leave it

*I got off the bus at the wrong stop | take the bus towards the Cathedral and get off at the museum*

Opposite – Phrasal Verb: *get on*

*the train was so crowded I couldn't get on*

- descendre de

### ground /graʊnd/ Noun

a *ground* or a sports *ground* is a place where sports are played outdoors

*we live near the cricket ground | there's a famous sports ground at Wembley*

- terrain

### half /ha:f/ Noun

*half* of something is one of two equal parts of it

*I'll be home in an hour and a half | I tore the paper in half*

- moitié

### journey /'dʒɜ:(r)ni/ Noun

if you go on a *journey*, you travel from one place to another, usually over a long distance

Collocates: a long journey

*you must be tired after your long journey | have a safe journey!*

- trajet

### keep /ki:p/ Verb

if you *keep* doing something, you continue doing it in the same way without stopping. If you *keep* fit, warm, etc., you continue being fit or warm

Collocates: keep doing something

*she'll just keep trying till she succeeds | he kept watching as her train moved out of the station*

- continuer à

### mile /maɪl/ Noun

a *mile* is a distance of 1.6 kilometres

*it's another half a mile to the hotel | the town is 500 miles east of Moscow*

- mile

### miss /mɪs/ Verb

if you *miss* something, you do not see it or notice it.

If you tell someone they can't *miss* something, you mean that it will be very obvious and they will certainly notice it

*the museum will be on your right; you can't miss it | keep your eyes open or you'll miss it*

- manquer

**monument** /ˈmɒnjʊmənt/ Noun

a *monument* is something that is built to remind people of something important in the past

Collocates: a monument to something

*a historic monument | a monument to the people who died in the war*

• monument

**playground** /ˈpleɪgraʊnd/ Noun

a *playground* is an area outdoors where children can play, often with special equipment for them

*a children's playground | the school playground (where children go in their break times)*

• cour de récréation / aire de jeux

**report** /rɪˈpɔː(r)t/ Verb

if you *report* a crime or an accident, you tell someone in authority that it has happened

*I need to go to a police station to report a crime | did you report the accident to the police?*

• signaler

**roundabout** /ˈraʊndəbaʊt/ Noun

a *roundabout* is a place where several roads join and traffic goes round a circle to help vehicles move from one road to another safely

*take the third exit from the roundabout | they're going to replace the traffic lights with a roundabout at that crossroads*

• rond-point

**straight** /streɪt/ Adverb

if you go *straight* or *straight on*, you keep going in the same direction and do not turn off to either side

*go straight on at the crossroads | walk under the railway bridge and keep going straight*

• tout droit

**subway** /ˈsʌbweɪ/ Noun

in Britain, a *subway* is a tunnel under a road so that people can walk from one side to the other safely. In the US, the *subway* is the underground rail system

*there's a subway under the main road near my house | I don't like using the subway after dark*

• passage souterrain / métro

**town hall** /ˌtaʊn ˈhɔːl/ Noun

in Britain, a *town hall* is a public building where the local government of a town has its offices

*it's opposite the town hall | his office is in the town hall*

• mairie

**traffic jam** /ˈtræfɪk ˌdʒæm/ Noun

if there is a *traffic jam* on a road, vehicles cannot move forwards because there is too much traffic or there is something that is blocking the road

*there's a huge traffic jam in the centre of town | we were stuck in a traffic jam for hours*

• embouteillage

**traffic lights** /ˈtræfɪk ˌlaɪts/ Noun plural

*traffic lights* are coloured lights next to a road, which control traffic. When they are red, cars have to stop. When they are green, cars can go

*the traffic lights turned red as we approached | turn left at the next set of traffic lights*

• feux tricolores

**war** /wɔː(r)/ Noun

when there is a *war*, one or more countries fight against one or more other countries using their army, navy, air force, etc.

Collocates: be at war

*his grandfather fought in the First World War | the two countries spent the next four years at war*

• guerre

**STUDENT'S BOOK PAGES 28–29**

**ages** /eɪdʒɪz/ Noun plural

if you say that something took *ages*, you mean it took a very long time

Collocates: take ages | for ages

*it took ages to go through security | the phone rang for ages before he answered*

• éternité

**airline** /ˈeə(r)ˌlaɪn/ Noun

an *airline* is a company that organises plane travel and carries passengers by air

*I wanted to speak to someone from the airline | Qantas is the national airline for Australia*

• compagnie aérienne

**alarm clock** /əˈlɑː(r)m ˌklɒk/ Noun

an *alarm clock* is a clock that makes a noise at the time you want to wake up

Collocates: set an alarm clock | an alarm clock goes off

*I set my alarm clock for 6:30 | my alarm clock went off at 7*

• réveil

**COMPOUND NOUNS**

Two nouns used together can make a new noun – for example, an **alarm clock** (a clock that makes a noise at the time you want to wake up). The first noun describes the second noun.

*It's much cheaper to get a **travel card**.*

*We need more **cycle lanes** in the town centre.*

*There's a huge **traffic jam** in the centre of town.*

**board** /bɔː(r)d/ Noun

a *board* is a large flat object in a public place that has information on it

*the arrivals board said their flight would be delayed by an hour | the menu is on the board above the bar*

- panneau

**board** /bɔː(r)d/ Verb

to *board* a plane or ship means to get on it. When a plane is *boarding*, the passengers are getting on it. The *boarding gate* is the place in an airport where passengers get on the plane

*we boarded over an hour late | you'll be able to board shortly*

Noun: *boarding*

Collocates: a boarding gate

*which boarding gate do we need to go to?*

- embarquer

**check in** /ˈtʃek ɪn/ Phrasal verb

if you *check in* at a hotel or airport, you give your personal details and show tickets etc. so that you can use the hotel or travel on the flight

*if you check in online it will save time at the airport*

Noun: *check-in* | Opposite – Verb: *check out*

Collocates: check-in desk/counter | check out of somewhere

*check-in is after midday*

- s'enregistrer

**connection** /kə'nekʃ(ə)n/ Noun

a *connection* is a bus, train, or plane that sets off at a time that allows passengers to get off an earlier bus, train, or plane in order to continue their journey

*we had an hour to get our connection in Paris | our plane was delayed from London and I missed my connection at Amsterdam*

Verb: *connect*

- correspondance

**delayed** /dɪ'leɪd/ Adjective

if something is *delayed*, it happens later than it was planned to happen. If you are *delayed*, you get somewhere later than you planned because of a problem on the way

*I sometimes missed a flight if my train was delayed | our new bathroom was delayed because we had to wait for a sink*

Verb: *delay*

*a storm delayed our departure from Southampton*

- retardé

**departure** /dɪ'pɑː(r)tʃə(r)/ Noun

your *departure* from a place is when you leave there to go somewhere else. At an airport, the *departure gate* is the place where you have to go to get on your plane. The *departure board* tells passengers which gate they have to go to for their plane

Collocates: a departure board | a departure gate

*I checked the departure board to see which gate we had to go to | his departure from the company came as a surprise to everyone*

Verb: *depart* | Opposite – Noun: *arrival*

Collocates: an arrivals board

- départ

**exciting** /ɪk'saɪtɪŋ/ Adjective

if something is *exciting*, it makes you feel happy and interested

*as the story got more and more exciting, I completely forgot the time | Moscow is a very exciting city*

Adjective: *excited*

*I'm really excited about starting my new job*

- palpitant

**fair** /feə(r)/ Adjective

something that is *fair* is right and reasonable. If you say to *be fair* before or after a comment, you mean that you are just saying something that is true and honest

*to be fair, it's several years since I missed a plane | I know we all laughed, but he has got a good voice, to be fair*

- juste

**go through** /gəʊ 'θruː/ Phrasal verb

if you *go through* a place, you pass through it on your way to another place

*it took ages to go through security | we went through Lyon on our way to Avignon | you have to go through the bedroom to get to the bathroom*

- traverser

**introduce** /ˌɪntrəˈdjuːs/ Verb

if you *introduce* something, you start doing it or using it  
*monthly meetings were introduced last year | the government wants to introduce a new tax law*

Noun: *introduction*

Collocates: the introduction of something

*another great event was the introduction of the Internet*

• *introduire*

**land** /lænd/ Verb

when a plane *lands*, it comes back down to the ground after a journey

*our plane landed on time | we're due to land at 6:30*

Opposite – Verb: *take off*

*every day at Heathrow 1,400 flights take off and land*

• *atterrir*

**line** /laɪn/ Noun

a *line*, or a railway *line* is track that trains travel along

*the train had to stop because there was something on the line | there's a direct line from London to Paris (you don't have to change trains on the way)*

• *ligne / voie*

**miss** /mɪs/ Verb

if you *miss* a bus, train, or plane, you do not get on it because you arrive too late at the bus stop, station, or airport

*I missed my flight to Paris | hurry up, or you'll miss the train | luckily, the train left late so we didn't miss it*

• *rater*

**on the way** /ɒn ðə 'weɪ/ Phrase

if you are *on the way* somewhere, you are travelling there but have not arrived yet

*we got stuck in traffic on the way here | Roger was very quiet on the way home*

• *en route*

**passenger** /ˈpæsɪndʒə(r)/ Noun

a *passenger* is someone who is travelling on a bus, train, plane, etc.

Collocates: rail/bus/tube/coach passengers

*the coach can carry 60 passengers | rail passengers face rising ticket prices*

• *passager*

**plenty** /ˈplenti/ Pronoun

if there is *plenty* of something, there is a lot of it, and enough of it for what you want to do

Collocates: plenty of something

*I got to the boarding gate in plenty of time | no more coffee for me, thanks. I've had plenty*

• *beaucoup*

**realise** /ˈrɪəlaɪz/ Verb

if you *realise* that something is true, you know or understand that it is true

*I realised that reading was actually enjoyable | I didn't realise it was so late*

Noun: *realisation*

*I came to the gradual realisation that I wanted to be a musician, not a lawyer*

• *réaliser*

**repair** /rɪˈpeə(r)/ Noun

if you *repair* something that is broken or not working properly, you mend it. The work that you do is a *repair*

Collocates: a repair to something

*the car needs a few small repairs | the repairs to the roof were completed last month | the necessary repairs cost over £7,000*

Verb: *repair*

• *réparer*

**replace** /rɪˈpleɪs/ Verb

if you *replace* something, you remove it and put something new in its place

Collocates: replace something with something

*they're going to knock down the factory and replace it with a shopping centre | Sally was ill, so Jenny replaced her for the first match*

Noun: *replacement*

Collocates: a replacement for someone or something

*they gave him a replacement for his watch*

• *remplacer*

**security** /sɪˈkjʊərəti/ Noun uncount

*security* is all the systems and actions that help to protect a place. *Security* at an airport is the place where you and your bags are checked to make sure you are not carrying guns or bombs

*it took ages to go through security | there is now much tighter security at all airports*

• *sécurité*

**set** /set/ Verb

if you *set* a machine, you move the controls so that it will operate in the way you want it to or at the time you want it to

*I set my alarm clock for 6:30 | set the timer on the oven so we know when to turn it off | set the scales to zero before you weigh anything*

• *réglér / programmer*

**stuck** /stʌk/ Adjective

if you are *stuck* somewhere, you cannot move easily or get away even though you want to

*we were stuck inside thanks to the rain | several vehicles became stuck in the snow*

• *bloqué*

**take off** /'teɪk ɒf/ Phrasal verb

when a *plane* takes off, it leaves the ground and starts flying through the air

*we didn't take off till after 9 o'clock | the pilot announced we'd be taking off in five minutes*

Noun: *take-off* | Opposite – Verb: *land*

*passengers must keep seat belts fastened during take-off and landing*

- **décoller**

---

**thriller** /'θrɪlə(r)/ Noun

a *thriller* is a book or film that is very exciting and makes you always want to know what is going to happen next. *Thrillers* are usually about crime or spies

*I was reading a thriller till after midnight | he's written two thrillers*

- **thriller / roman à suspense**

---

**unfortunately** /ʌn'fɔː(r)tʃ(ə)nətli/ Adverb

if something is *unfortunate*, it is rather sad and disappointing. You say *unfortunately* when you are describing something unfortunate that has happened

*unfortunately, I got there too late and missed my plane | My uncle, unfortunately, had to stay behind*

Adjective: *unfortunate* | Opposite – Adverb: *fortunately*

- **malheureusement**

---

**STUDENT'S BOOK PAGES 30–31****afford** /ə'fɔː(r)d/ Verb

if you can't *afford* something, you don't have enough money to be able to pay for it

*she can't afford a new car | I could never afford to live in London*

Adjective: *affordable*

*the flights are more affordable if you book in advance*

- **avoir les moyens d'acheter quelque chose**

---

**cancel** /'kæns(ə)l/ Verb

if you *cancel* an event that was planned, you decide that it will not happen

*the train was cancelled because there was no driver | they had to cancel the meeting at the last minute*

- **annuler**

---

**charge** /tʃɑː(r)dʒ/ Verb

if you *charge* someone an amount of money, you ask them to give you that amount when you sell something to them or do a job for them

Collocates: *charge (someone) for (doing) something*

*he charged us £200 for painting the windows | do you charge for delivery?*

Noun: *charge*

*a £5 delivery charge*

- **faire payer**

---

**clear up** /'kliːə(r) ʌp/ Phrasal verb

if you *clear up* or *clear* a place *up*, you make it clean and tidy and get rid of anything that is not wanted there

*it took us hours to clear up after the party | we need to clear this mess up before Mum gets home*

- **ranger**

---

**closed** /kləʊzd/ Adjective

if a place is *closed*, people are not allowed to go there

*East Ham station is closed because of a flood | the motorway is completely closed for repair work*

Verb: *close*

*they had to close the road for repairs*

- **fermé**

---

**coach** /kəʊtʃ/ Noun

a *coach* is a bus that is used for long journeys

*I took a coach from London to Paris | do you know what time the coach leaves?*

- **car**

---

**crash** /kræʃ/ Verb

if cars, lorries, planes, etc. *crash*, they hit other vehicles or objects with a lot of force, often injuring people and causing damage

*a lorry crashed earlier this morning on the A516 | he crashed into a tree*

Noun: *crash*

*there's been a serious crash on the motorway*

- **avoir un accident**

---

**cycle** /'saɪk(ə)l/ Verb

if you *cycle* somewhere, you go there riding on a bicycle

*I cycle to work, even when it rains | we cycled 300 miles in four days*

Noun: *cyclist*

*my father's a keen cyclist*

- **aller en vélo**

---

**deal** /di:l/ Noun

a *deal* is an agreement between people who have discussed a problem or business arrangement

Collocates: *make/strike a deal*

*after hours of talks a deal was struck | I'll make a deal with you – you can borrow the car if you put some petrol in it for me*

- **marché**

---

**flooding** /'flʌdɪŋ/ Noun uncount

*flooding* is a situation when a large amount of water comes into an area or building where it is not meant to be

*East Ham station is closed because of flooding | flooding caused serious damage to the school*

Noun: *flood* | Verb: *flood*

- **inondation**

---

**hire** /'haɪə(r)/ Verb

if you *hire* something, you pay to use it for a short time and then give it back

*we hired a car for a week | let's hire a boat for the day*

Noun: *hire*

Collocates: on hire | for hire

*we've got a boat on hire for the summer*

• *louer*

**huge** /hju:dʒ/ Adjective

something that is *huge* is extremely big

*they're putting up a huge building near the park | most of the rooms are huge but the kitchen is tiny*

Adverb: *hugely*

*a hugely successful company*

• *énorme*

**lane** /leɪn/ Noun

a *lane* on a big road is one of the parts that cars and other vehicles drive along. A *bus lane* or *cycle lane* is a part of the road where only buses or bicycles are allowed

*he got a fine for driving in a bus lane | we need more cycle lanes in the town centre*

• *voie*

**let** /let/ Verb

to *let* someone go somewhere or do something means to allow them to go there or do that

*the driver stopped after two hours to let the passengers get some fresh air | I rang the bell and waited for someone to let me in | they wouldn't let me see my grandfather when he was in hospital*

• *laisser*

**licence** /'laɪs(ə)ns/ Noun

a *licence* is an official document that gives you permission to do something

*do you need a licence to ride a motorbike? | you must have a full driving licence to hire a car*

• *permis*

**load** /ləʊd/ Noun

a *load* is the thing or quantity of things or goods that is being carried in a vehicle at one time. To *load* a vehicle means to put a load into it

*the truck was carrying a huge load | the lorry had a heavy load and went slowly up the hill*

Verb: *load* || Opposite – Verb: *unload*

• *chargement*

**mess** /mes/ Noun

a *mess* is an untidy place with lots of rubbish and things that are not wanted

Collocates: be in a mess

*the road is shut while the police clear up the mess | the flat's a bit of a mess at the moment*

Adjective: *messy*

• *désordre*

**nightmare** /'naɪt,mɛə(r)/ Noun

a *nightmare* is a very frightening dream. You can refer to a really unpleasant or worrying situation as a *nightmare*

Collocates: a nightmare about something | give someone nightmares

*the baby screamed all the way there; it was a nightmare | watching horror films gives me nightmares*

• *cauchemar*

**overnight** /ˌɔvə(r)'naɪt/ Adverb

if something happens *overnight*, it happens during the night

*we decided to travel overnight | are you going to stay overnight?*

Adjective: *overnight*

• *pendant la nuit*

**park** /pɑ:(r)k/ Verb

if you *park* a car, you stop it and leave it somewhere for a while until you need to drive it again

*we drove round for ages looking for somewhere to park | we parked in the car park next to the supermarket*

Adjective: *parked* | Noun: *parking*

*the bus lost control and drove into a line of parked cars*

• *garer*

**public transport** /ˌpʌblɪk 'trænsɜ:(r)t/ Noun uncount

ordinary people can be referred to as *the public*. *Public transport* is buses, trains, etc. which anyone can use if they have a ticket

*most people go to work on public transport | despite the snow, public transport is running normally*

• *transport public*

**rail** /reɪl/ Noun uncount

*rail* is the system of trains and railways

*there's a really fast rail service between Rome and Milan | a high speed rail network*

• *rail / système ferroviaire*

**renew** /rɪ'nju:/ Verb

if you *renew* something that is old or broken, you replace it with something new

*they're carrying out repair work to renew the underground | the garage door was renewed last year*

• *remplacer*

**replacement** /rɪ'pleɪsmənt/ Noun

a *replacement* is something that takes the place of another thing that you no longer have or can use

Collocates: a replacement for something or someone

*they gave him a replacement for his watch | several of the sales team are leaving, so we'll have to find replacements for them*

Verb: *replace*

Collocates: replace something with something

- remplacement

**ride** /raɪd/ Verb

if you *ride* a bike or a motorbike, you sit on it and make it go. You also say that you *ride* a horse

*I was only four when I learnt to ride a bike | I've never ridden a horse in my life*

Noun: *rider*

*the motorbike rider was badly injured in the crash*

- monter à

**run** /rʌn/ Verb

if buses or trains *are running*, they are regularly taking passengers to places

*trains between London and Birmingham are now running normally | the train runs every 30 minutes (one leaves every 30 minutes)*

- passer

**scream** /skri:m/ Verb

if someone *screams*, they shout in a very loud, high voice because they are frightened, in pain, or very excited

*the girls were screaming with laughter | don't scream or I'll shoot!*

Noun: *scream*

*the silence was broken by a scream from somewhere in the garden*

- hurler

**search** /sɜ:(r)tʃ/ Verb

if you *search* a place, you look in it carefully in order to find something that is lost or hidden

*my bag was searched at the airport | 100 police officers are searching the area*

Noun: *search*

Collocates: conduct/carry out a search | a thorough search

*police conducted a thorough search (a very detailed search) of the area*

- chercher (partout) dans

**service** /'sɜ:(r)vɪs/ Noun

a *service* is a particular area of activity that provides something that people need, like transport, hospitals, electricity, etc.

*a regular bus service between Plymouth and Torquay | we need more money for the police service*

- service

**skill** /skɪl/ Noun

a *skill* is an ability to do something well

*I've got good computer skills | it's important to keep learning new skills*

Adjective: *skilful*

- aptitude

**stretch** /stretʃ/ Verb

if you *stretch* a part of your body, you push it or make it straight, so that the muscles become long

*it's important to stretch your muscles before you do exercise | I sat up in bed and stretched*

- étirer

**test** /test/ Noun

a *test* is a set of questions that you have to answer in order to show how much you know about a subject

Collocates: a weekly/monthly test | a written/oral test | a practical test

*a maths test | you have half an hour to complete the test*

Verb: *test*

- contrôle

**travel card** /'træv(ə)l ,kɑ:(r)d/ Noun

a *travel card* is a ticket that lets you use buses and trains in a city for a certain amount of time

Collocates: a one-day/weekly etc. travel card

*buy a travel card and you can go round the city all day | a three-day travel card*

- carte de transport

**trouble** /'trʌb(ə)l/ Noun uncount

*trouble* is a problem or difficult situation

Collocates: have (some) trouble

*expect a bit of trouble on the M25 because of heavy traffic | we had some trouble finding the hotel*

- difficulté

**truck** /trʌk/ Noun

a *truck* is a very large road vehicle that is used for carrying goods. In British English, the word *lorry* is often used instead of *truck*

Collocates: a truck driver

*there was a long line of cars stuck behind a truck | the cafe was full of truck drivers*

- camion

**van** /væn/ Noun

a *van* is a road vehicle used for carrying things. *Vans* are bigger than cars but smaller than lorries

*the two men were taken away in a police van | I never keep my equipment in the van overnight*

- camionnette

**vehicle** /'vi:k(ə)/ Noun

a *vehicle* is a machine with an engine such as a car, van, or lorry, that carries people and or goods on roads

*you can hire any sort of vehicle there | 25 vehicles were involved in the accident on the motorway*

- véhicule

**wardrobe** /'wɔ:(r)drəʊb/ Noun

a *wardrobe* is a large cupboard where you can hang your clothes

Collocates: a fitted/built-in wardrobe

*there were two wardrobes in the bedroom | a*

*built-in wardrobe (which is part of the house and cannot be moved)*

- penderie

# 4 EAT

## STUDENT'S BOOK PAGES 34–35

### choice /tʃɔɪs/ Noun

if there is a *choice*, you can choose between different things

Collocates: a choice of something | have no choice

*there's a choice of three desserts | all the other tables were reserved so we had no choice*

Verb: choose

#### • *choix*

### complain /kəm'pleɪn/ Verb

if you *complain* about something, you say that there is something wrong and that you are not satisfied with it

Collocates: complain about something | complain to someone | complain that

*you should complain to the manager | customers complained that the prices were too high*

Noun: *complaint*

Collocates: make a complaint

*I'd like to make a complaint (to complain about something)*

#### • *se plaindre*

### cookery /'kʊk(ə)ri/ Noun uncount

*cookery* is the activity of preparing and cooking food

Collocates: a cookery programme | a cookery class

*I don't really like cookery programmes | he opened a cookery school in Cirencester*

#### • *cuisine*

### delicious /dɪ'lɪʃəs/ Adjective

food that is *delicious* tastes or smells very nice

*the dessert was delicious | that was a delicious meal*

#### • *délicieux*

### disgusting /dɪs'gʌstɪŋ/ Adjective

something that is *disgusting* is horrible and makes you feel sick

*the food was disgusting | what's that disgusting smell?*

#### • *dégoûtant*

### grilled /grɪld/ Adjective

*grilled* food has been cooked under very strong heat

*do you want your steak fried or grilled? | grilled food is healthier for you than fried food*

Verb: *grill* | Noun: *grill*

*I prefer to grill my burgers*

#### • *grillé*

### option /'ɒpʃ(ə)n/ Noun

an *option* is something that you can choose

*they don't have any vegetarian options | we have two options*

*– we can walk or go by bus*

Adjective: *optional*

#### • *option*

### portion /'pɔː(r)ʃ(ə)n/ Noun

a *portion* of food is an amount that is served to one person at a meal

Collocates: a portion of something

*it was quite expensive and the portions were very small |*

*I ordered a sandwich and a portion of chips*

#### • *part*

### programme /'prəʊgræm/ Noun

a *programme* is an individual broadcast on radio or television

*there was a really interesting programme on BBC1 last night |*

*she makes documentary programmes for the radio*

#### • *émission*

### properly /'prɒpə(r)li/ Adverb

if you do something *properly*, you do it well or in the correct way

*the fish wasn't cooked properly | my phone isn't*

*working properly*

Adjective: *proper*

#### • *bien*

### recipe /'resəpi/ Noun

a *recipe* is a set of instructions for making a particular dish

Collocates: a recipe for something | follow a recipe

*I didn't follow the recipe properly, and it came out all soft on the outside | I get all my recipes online now*

#### • *recette*

### rude /ru:d/ Adjective

if someone is *rude*, they speak or behave in a way that is not polite and which might upset people

*they are such rude children | he was extremely rude to his aunt*

Adverb: *rudely*

*he pushed past her rudely and took the last seat*

#### • *impoli*

**seat** /sɪt/ Noun

a *seat* is a chair, or a place to sit

*the restaurant often gets busy, so you have to wait for a seat | all the seats on the train were reserved*

• place

**terrace** /ˈterəs/ Noun

a *terrace* is an area just outside a building or room where you can sit

*you can have dinner on the terrace | the restaurant has a terrace with a great view over the sea*

• terrasse

## STUDENT'S BOOK PAGES 36–37

**bean** /bi:n/ Noun

*beans* are the seeds of some plants that are eaten as food. Some *beans* are dried so that they will keep for a long time  
*it's a lovely dish of fried rice and black beans | I grow beans in my garden*

• haricot

**bill** /bɪl/ Noun

a *bill* is a list which shows you how much you have to pay for something that you have received

Collocates: pay a bill

*could we have the bill please? | I forgot to pay the electricity bill*

• addition

**bitter** /ˈbɪtə(r)/ Adjective

something that is *bitter* has a strong taste that is the opposite of sweet

*if it's too bitter, add some sugar | they taste quite bitter | it had a horrible, bitter taste*

• amer

**book** /bʊk/ Verb

if you *book* something, you arrange to have it or use it at a particular time in the future

Collocates: book a table/seat/ticket

*I'd like to book a table for four | you can book your tickets by phone or online*

Noun: *booking*

Collocates: make a booking

*can I make a booking for next Saturday, please?*

• réserver

**cloth** /klɒθ/ Noun

a *cloth* is a small piece of material that you use for cleaning things

*could we have a cloth, please? | wipe the table with a damp cloth (one that is slightly wet)*

• chiffon

**contain** /kən'teɪn/ Verb

to *contain* something means to have it inside

*does the dish contain meat? | the box contained my old wedding dress*

Noun: *container*

• contenir

**dessert** /dɪ'zɜ:(r)t/ Noun

a *dessert* is a dish of sweet food that you eat at the end of a meal

*what's for dessert? | all the desserts were delicious*

• dessert

**get past** /ˌget 'pɑ:st/ Phrasal verb

if you want to *get past*, you want to go from one side of something to the other, and there is not very much space for you to go through

*could you move your chair a little so I can get past? | there was a car in the way and I couldn't get past*

• passer

**herb** /hɜ:(r)b/ Noun

a *herb* is a plant with leaves that are used to add flavour to food

*mint is an easy herb to grow in your garden | add some chopped herbs before you serve it*

• herbe (aromatique)

**jug** /dʒʌɡ/ Noun

a *jug* is a container for holding and pouring liquids

Collocates: a jug of something

*could we have a jug of tap water please? | she put a jug of milk on the table*

• carafe

**leg** /leg/ Noun

a *leg* is an animal's leg that is eaten as food

*a roast leg of lamb | to serve four, you need two chicken legs*

• gigot / cuisse

**mild** /maɪld/ Adjective

food that is *mild* does not have a strong taste

*I prefer mild cheese | I asked for a hot curry, but it's actually rather mild*

• peu épicé

**offer** /'ɒfə(r)/ Noun

if you *offer* someone something, you ask them if they would like it and tell them they can have it if they want it. When you say something like this, you are making an *offer*

Collocates: accept an offer | make an offer | an offer of something

*when you are making a polite offer, you should say "Would you like" rather than "Do you want" | I accepted her offer of a lift to the station*

Verb: *offer*

Collocates: offer to do something | offer something to someone | offer someone something

- *proposer*

**order** /'ɔ:(r)də(r)/ Verb

when you *order* in a restaurant, you tell the waiter what you want to eat and drink

*are you ready to order? | Pete ordered another bottle of water*

Noun: *order*

*we'd been waiting an hour and our order still hadn't arrived*

- *commander*

**raw** /rɔ:/ Adjective

*raw* food has not been cooked

*a dish made with raw fish | you can eat them cooked or raw*

- *cru*

**ready** /'redi/ Adjective

if you are *ready* to do something, you are prepared and able to do it immediately

Collocates: be ready to do something

*at the age of 16, I was ready to leave home | he was still getting ready when the taxi arrived | aren't you ready yet?*

- *prêt*

**reasonable** /'ri:z(ə)nəb(ə)l/ Adjective

if you think the price of something is *reasonable*, you think it is not too expensive and is good value for money

*the prices here are quite reasonable | it's difficult to get a good meal for a reasonable price near the station*

Adverb: *reasonably*

Collocates: reasonably priced

*the evening meal was tasty and reasonably priced*

- *raisonnable*

**request** /rɪ'kwest/ Noun

if you make a *request*, you ask someone in a polite way if they will do something

Collocates: a request for something

*it wasn't an order, just a polite request | I made a request for some information about the election*

Verb: *request*

*the pilot requested permission to land*

- *demande*

**roast** /rəʊst/ Adjective

if you *roast* food, you cook it in an oven, usually adding some fat to it. Food that is cooked in this way is *roast* or *roasted*, for example *roast* chicken or *roasted* vegetables

*you can have roast, boiled, or fried potatoes | the roasted peppers were still too hot to eat*

Verb: *roast*

*put the chicken in the oven and roast it for two hours*

- *rôti*

**salty** /'sɔ:lti/ Adjective

food that is *salty* has a strong taste of salt

*the meat was too salty | eating salty food is not good for you*

- *salé*

**seafood** /'si:fu:d/ Noun uncount

*seafood* is fish and other animals from the sea that you can eat

*I don't really like seafood — I prefer meat | enjoy fresh, delicious seafood in our three-star restaurant*

- *produits de la mer*

**seed** /si:d/ Noun

a *seed* is a small part of a plant that grows into a new plant when it is in the ground. Some *seeds* can be eaten as food

*I bought some seeds to grow herbs in my kitchen | you could add sunflower seeds to your breakfast cereal*

- *graine*

**shell** /ʃel/ Noun

a *shell* is the hard part on the outside of some sea animals

*they're a kind of seafood with a big shell | we spent the morning looking for shells on the beach*

- *coquille*

**skin** /skɪn/ Noun

the *skin* on a fruit or vegetable is the part on the outside

*it's a kind of green fruit with a very thick skin | I eat apples with the skin on*

- *peau*

**soft** /soft/ Adjective

something that is *soft* is not hard and changes shape easily when you press it

*the fruit should be soft and sweet | cook the potatoes until they are soft | a lovely soft pillow*

•   mou

**spicy** /'spai:si/ Adjective

*spicy* food has a strong flavour because it is cooked with special seeds or powders called spices

*it was served with a spicy sauce | I find Indian food too spicy*

Noun: *spice*

*I love to cook with herbs and spices*

•   épice

**stone** /stəʊn/ Noun

the *stone* in a fruit is the very hard part in the middle that you don't eat

*it's a green fruit with a very big stone in the middle | cut the fruit in half and remove the stone*

•   noyau

**suggestion** /sə'dʒestʃ(ə)n/ Noun

if you make a *suggestion*, you describe a plan or possibility for someone to consider

Collocates: make a suggestion

*can I make a suggestion? | as always, your suggestions are welcome*

Verb: *suggest*

•   suggestion

**sweet** /swi:t/ Adjective

food that is *sweet* tastes as if there is a lot of sugar in it

*what you need is a cup of hot, sweet tea | these oranges are really sweet*

•   sucré

**tap** /tæp/ Noun

a *tap* is an object that controls the flow of water, for example into a sink or bath. If you drink *tap water*, you drink water that has come from a tap and not from a bottle

Collocates: turn a tap on/off | a hot/cold tap

*the bathroom had gold-coloured taps | turn the hot tap off if the water gets too hot*

•   robinet

**thick** /θɪk/ Adjective

something that is *thick* is not thin

*a pair of thick socks | the walls are very thick | she's got lovely thick hair*

•   épais

**tip** /tɪp/ Noun

a *tip* is an extra amount of money that you give when you pay for a meal in a restaurant or for a service that you have had

Collocates: leave a tip

*shall we leave a tip, or is the service included? | most hairdressers rely on tips because their pay is very low*

Verb: *tip*

•   pourboire

## STUDENT'S BOOK PAGES 38–39

**blood** /blʌd/ Noun uncount

*blood* is the red liquid that carries oxygen around your body, and which is pumped by your heart

*he lost a lot of blood after the accident | I can't stand the sight of blood*

•   sang

**concerned** /kən'sɜ:(r)nd/ Adjective

if you are *concerned* about something, it is important to you and you think about it seriously or worry about it

Collocates: be concerned about something

*people are becoming more concerned about their health | concerned members of the public asked for a meeting with the police*

Noun: *concern*

Collocates: express concern | cause concern | a main concern

•   inquiet

**consist** /kən'sɪst/ Verb

if something *consists of* different things, it is made of those things

Collocates: consist of something

*the dish consists of eggs and lemon juice with a lot of sugar | the committee consisted of seven elected members*

•   consister

## PREPOSITIONS

Many words commonly go with prepositions.

*consist of* water, sugar and fruit

*experiment with* different ingredients

*we're still open to* suggestions

*she was very concerned about* her son's exam results

Notice any prepositions when you learn words and expressions. There are exercises at the end of each unit in the Vocabulary Builder that test you on prepositions.

**experiment** /ɪk'sperɪmənt/ Verb

if you *experiment*, you try new and different things

Collocates: experiment with something

*they wouldn't experiment with anything new at breakfast | I began to experiment with different paint colours*

Noun: *experiment*

*we bought some ostrich meat as an experiment*

- *expérience*

**grab** /græb/ Verb

if you *grab* something such as food or a drink, you take it from somewhere very quickly, especially because you are in a hurry

*I'll just grab a quick coffee on my way to work | there's no time for lunch | I'll grab a sandwich at the station | she grabbed a tin of cola on her way into the lecture*

- *s'emparer de*

**habit** /'hæbɪt/ Noun

someone's *habits* are the things that they do regularly as part of their daily life

*my sleeping habits have changed since I came back to Europe | he has a habit of singing to himself in the bath*

- *habitude*

**health** /helθ/ Noun uncount

your *health* is the condition of your body. If you are in good *health*, you are well, and you can also say that you are *healthy*. If you are in bad *health*, you are ill

Collocates: be in good/bad/poor health

*the report looked at areas like health and education | she was in very good health*

Adjective: *healthy*

- *santé*

**include** /ɪn'klu:d/ Verb

if one thing *includes* another, the second thing is a part of the first thing

*breakfast includes tea or strong coffee among other things | the concert included two pieces by Beethoven*

- *inclure*

**lifestyle** /'laɪf,staɪl/ Noun

someone's *lifestyle* is the way they live, the things they do for work and pleasure, the way they spend their money, etc.

Collocates: a healthy lifestyle | a simple lifestyle | an active lifestyle

*people's lifestyles are too busy these days | we lived a simple lifestyle out in the country*

- *style de vie*

**link** /lɪŋk/ Verb

if one thing is *linked* to another, or if two things are *linked*, there is a strong connection between them

Collocates: link something to something

*cigarettes are strongly linked to cancer | the two facts are directly linked*

Noun: *link*

Collocates: a link between things

*the police have discovered a link between the two cases*

- *lier*

**mixture** /'mɪkstʃə(r)/ Noun

a *mixture* of different things is a lot of them all together

Collocates: a mixture of something

*a mixture of different musical styles | bread is basically a mixture of flour and water that is then baked*

Verb: *mix* | Noun: *mix*

- *mélange*

**open** /'əʊpən/ Adjective

if you are *open* to something new, you are very willing to consider it or try it

Collocates: be open to something

*I'm always open to trying new things | there's been no final decision yet, and we're still open to suggestions*

- *ouvert*

**proper** /'prɒpə(r)/ Adjective

something that is *proper* is correct, and is exactly how it is meant to be

*you should eat a proper meal, not this fast food | make sure he gets proper medical treatment*

Adverb: *properly*

*my phone isn't working properly*

- *bon*

**secret** /'sɪ:krət/ Noun

a *secret* is something that not very many people know about because people do not talk about it

Collocates: keep a secret

*many Bulgarians believe that the secret behind their long life is their yoghurt | can you keep a secret? (not tell anyone)*

Adjective: *secret*

- *secret*

**serve** /sɜ:(r)v/ Verb

when you *serve* food, you give it to someone on a plate ready for them to eat. When food is *served* in a restaurant, someone brings it to you

*it's usually served with chips and peas | I'm going to serve the soup with home-made bread | we were served by a very polite waiter*

- *servir*

**snack** /snæk/ Noun

a *snack* is a small amount of food that people eat that is not part of their regular meals

Collocates: have a snack

*do you eat any snacks between meals? | I had a snack on the way home*

Verb: *snack*

Collocates: snack on something

- en-cas

**space** /speɪs/ Noun uncount

*space* is the area up in the sky and beyond, where the moon and stars are. A *space station* is a small building in space  
*the first Korean astronaut took special kimchi with him to the international space station! | Yuri Gagarin was the first person in space*

- espace

**stall** /stɔ:l/ Noun

a *stall* is a table outside, for example in a market or on the street, where people sell things

*there are stalls on the street selling hot food | I got this from a book stall*

- stand

**stomach** /stʌmək/ Noun

your *stomach* is the part of your body where food goes when you eat it

*don't take this medicine on an empty stomach (if you haven't eaten anything recently) | my stomach was rumbling (making a noise because I was hungry)*

- estomac

**traditional** /trə'dɪʃ(ə)nəl/ Adjective

*traditional* beliefs, activities, etc. have existed for a long time and have not changed or become more modern

*I like a traditional English breakfast when I'm on holiday | our furniture is made by hand in the traditional way*

Noun: *tradition* | Adverb: *traditionally*

*it's a tradition to have candles on a birthday cake*

- traditionnel

**typical** /'tɪpɪk(ə)/ Adjective

something that is *typical* is usual and has the same features as other things of the same kind

*what's a typical breakfast in your country? | my typical day starts at 7 when the alarm clock goes off*

Adverb: *typically*

*class sizes are typically around 18 to 20 students*

- typique

**STUDENT'S BOOK PAGES 40–41****ban** /bæn/ Verb

if someone in authority *bans* something, they do not allow it. If they *ban* someone from doing something, they do not allow them to do it

Collocates: ban someone from doing something

*my parents banned me from playing video games | he was banned from driving for two years*

Noun: *ban* | Adjective: *banned*

*the public smoking ban was introduced in 2007*

- interdire

**remove** /rɪ'mu:v/ Verb

if you *remove* something, you take it away from where it is

*it's difficult to remove the smell | the police removed some cars from the main shopping street*

Noun: *removal*

*removal of the seat cover is quite easy*

- enlever

**spread** /spred/ Verb

if something *spreads*, it moves or grows and affects a larger area

Collocates: spread through an area | spread to somewhere  
*unfortunately, the cancer continued to spread | the fire spread quickly through the farm buildings*

Noun: *spread*

Collocates: the spread of something

*closing the border won't stop the spread of the disease*

- se propager

# 5 RELAX

## STUDENT'S BOOK PAGES 44–45

### admit /əd'mɪt/ Verb

if you *admit* that something is true, you say that it is true, even if it is embarrassing for you

*I must admit, I don't like swimming in outdoor pools | I have to admit that I have never read Hamlet*

- admettre

### cards /kɑ:(r)d/ Noun

a *card* or a playing *card* is a small piece of cardboard that has numbers or pictures on it, used for playing games. A pack of *cards* usually has 52 *cards* in it. If you play *cards*, you play a game using a pack of cards

Collocates: a pack/deck of cards | deal the cards

*he always cheats when he plays cards | it's your turn to deal the cards (give them out to the players at the start of the game)*

- cartes

### clear /klaɪə(r)/ Adjective

if a substance is *clear*, you can see through it easily

*the water is really clear | a clear glass bottle*

- clair

### client /'klaɪənt/ Noun

a *client* is person who is paying someone for a professional service

*she had an appointment with a client at three o'clock | his clients include a number of famous actors*

- client

### come round /,kʌm 'raʊnd/ Phrasal verb

if someone *comes round*, they come to your home to visit you

*we've got friends coming round on Sunday | why don't you come round after work for a cup of tea?*

- passer

### conservative /kən'sɜ:(r)vətɪv/ Adjective

someone who is *conservative* does not like change or new ideas

*he's rather old-fashioned and very conservative | I couldn't help laughing at his conservative attitudes*

- conservateur

### course /kɔ:(r)s/ Noun

a *course* is a large area of land used for playing golf or for horse races

*is there a golf course near here? | our nearest race course is at Sandown Park*

- parcours / piste

### court /kɔ:(r)t/ Noun

a *court* is an area of ground where you play games such as tennis, volleyball, or basketball

Collocates: a tennis/volleyball/basketball court

*the players have been on court (playing) for over two hours | there's a public basketball court in the park*

- court / terrain

### fishing /'fɪʃɪŋ/ Noun uncount

*fishing* is the activity of trying to catch fish in a river or the sea

Collocates: go fishing | a fishing rod

*I went fishing yesterday | do you want to come fishing with me tomorrow?*

- pêche

### forgetful /fə(r)'getf(ə)l/ Adjective

someone who is *forgetful* keeps forgetting things

*as he grew older, he became more and more forgetful | he's very forgetful, so I was surprised that he remembered my birthday*

- distrain

### gear /gɪə(r)/ Noun uncount

*gear* is the equipment you need to do a particular activity, especially a sports activity

Collocates: fishing/swimming/cycling etc. gear

*don't forget to bring your fishing gear | he was wearing his cycling gear*

- équipement

### lazy /'leɪzi/ Adjective

someone who is *lazy* does not like working or making any effort to do things

*I'm too lazy to cook for myself | He's so lazy! Still in bed at 12 o'clock*

Noun: *laziness*

*the biggest reason he failed his exams was his laziness*

- paresseux

### loser /'lu:zə(r)/ Noun

a *loser* is someone who has lost a game or competition. If someone is a bad *loser*, they behave badly and become angry when they lose because they are upset or disappointed. A good *loser* is someone who behaves well when they lose

Collocates: a bad/good loser

*I was such a bad loser when I was a child | the winner gets a bar of chocolate, the loser gets nothing*

Verb: *lose*

- perdant

**loud** /laʊd/ Adjective

someone who is *loud* behaves in a very lively way and doesn't talk quietly but always in a loud voice

*she never liked her brother's friends, who were all loud and aggressive | he's a bit loud at times, but he's been a good friend to me*

- bruyant

**messy** /'mesi/ Adjective

someone who is *messy* does not keep things tidy. A messy place is very untidy

*my sister's room is so messy | he's a messy eater (he always drops food or spreads it over his face and clothes)*

Noun: *mess*

*your bedroom is such a mess!*

- sale

**-y**

Many adjectives ending in -y are based on nouns. For example:

<i>He's quite messy.</i>	<i>Clear the mess in the kitchen.</i>
<i>It's lucky you're here.</i>	<i>Good luck with the exam!</i>
<i>I eat a lot of healthy food.</i>	<i>He's in good health.</i>
<i>I like spicy food.</i>	<i>Add some spices to the dish.</i>
<i>My car's dirty.</i>	<i>He has dirt on his jeans.</i>

**pitch** /ptʃ/ Noun

a *pitch* is an area of land where you play games such as football or rugby

Collocates: a football/rugby/hockey pitch

*at last, the teams ran onto the pitch | the rugby pitch was too wet to play on*

- terrain

**pool** /pu:l/ Noun

a *pool*, or a *swimming pool*, is an area of water that has been built for people to swim in

Collocates: an outdoor/indoor pool | a heated pool

*it costs £2 to go into our local swimming pool | the leisure centre has an indoor pool as well as a heated outdoor pool*

- piscine

**racket** /'rækt/ Noun

a *racket* is the thing that you use to hit the ball in games such as tennis

Collocates: a tennis/badminton/squash racket

*an expensive tennis racket | with modern rackets you can hit the ball incredibly hard*

- raquette

**rod** /rɒd/ Noun

a *rod* or a *fishing rod* is a long thin piece of wood or plastic which you use to try and catch fish. A thin line, or fishing line, goes from the *rod* into the water. The fishing line has a hook on the end of it which is used to pull the fish out of the water

*I got a new fishing rod for Christmas | I can lend you a rod if you forgot to bring one with you*

- canne

**track** /træk/ Noun

a *track* is a place with marks on the ground where people run in organised races

*an indoor running track | a race track (where horses race)*

- piste

**unfit** /ʌn'fɪt/ Adjective

if you are *unfit*, your body is not very strong or healthy because you do not do enough exercise

*I was so unfit that I had to rest half way up the stairs | he was too unfit to join the football club*

Opposite – Adjective: *fit*

Collocates: keep fit

*I walk a lot to keep fit*

- qui n'est pas en forme

**up** /ʌp/ Adverb

if you are *up*, you have got out of bed in the morning

*I won't be up before 11 tomorrow | she was always up by 7 ready for her morning run*

- debout

**warm up** /'wɔ:(r)m ʌp/ Phrasal verb

if you *warm up*, or if something *warms you up*, you become warmer after you have been cold for a while

*the water's cold, but you'll soon warm up | here, have some soup. This should warm you up*

- s'échauffer

**STUDENT'S BOOK PAGES 46–47**

**aim** /eɪm/ Verb

if you *aim* to do something, you try to do it successfully

Collocates: aim to do something

*players aim to kick or head the ball over the net | the campaign aims to inform people about healthy living*

Noun: *aim*

Collocates: a main aim

*what are the main aims of the project?*

- viser

**banned** /bænd/ Adjective

if something is *banned*, it is not allowed to happen because of a law or rule

Collocates: be banned from doing something

*the sport was banned for a while because of violence | two cyclists were accused of taking banned substances (drugs that were not allowed)*

Verb: *ban* | Noun: *ban*

Collocates: ban someone from doing something | a ban on something | impose a ban | lift a ban

*he's been banned from driving for a year*

- *interdit*

---

**beat** /bi:t/ Verb

if you *beat* someone in a game or competition, you win

*my brother always beats me when we play chess | Tottenham beat Chelsea 5-3 | I've played him at tennis every week for a year and I've never beaten him*

- *battre*

---

**WORDS WITH SIMILAR MEANINGS**

Some words like *win* and *beat* have a similar meaning and may be translated with one word in your language. The difference is sometimes to do with grammar. For example, you can't 'win someone', you 'beat them'. Sometimes the difference is to do with collocation. That's why it's important to look at and learn the examples in the Vocabulary Builder.

**bet** /bet/ Verb

if you *bet*, you try to win money by saying who you think will win a race or game

Collocates: bet (something) on something | bet (someone) that

*I bet £5 on Arsenal to win the cup | I bet you that Mo Farah will win the next Olympics*

Noun: *bet* | Noun: *betting*

Collocates: place a bet

*I want to place a bet on the next race (make a bet)*

- *parier*

---

**bounce** /baʊns/ Verb

if you *bounce*, you jump up and down on a soft surface. If a ball *bounces*, it comes back after hitting a surface

*do you like bouncing on a trampoline? | the ball bounced off the wall and broke a window*

Noun: *bounce*

*let's have a bounce on the trampoline*

- *rebondir*

---

**cheat** /tʃi:t/ Verb

if you *cheat*, you deliberately break the rules in an exam or game in order to do well

*I'm sure my brother cheats when he plays cards | she got caught cheating in an exam*

Noun: *cheat*

*he accused me of being a cheat*

- *tricher*

---

**contrast** /'kɒntrɑ:st/ Noun

a *contrast* is a very noticeable difference between two things. If one thing is *in contrast* to another, it is very different

Collocates: in contrast | by contrast

*football is a simple game. In contrast, cricket is very complicated | after a week in New York, Oxford was quite a contrast*

- *contrast*

---

**create** /kri'eɪt/ Verb

to *create* something means to make it start to exist

*new sports are being created all the time | for every problem the Internet creates, it also brings a solution*

Noun: *creation*

*since its creation in 2003, the company has made over a million cars*

- *créer*

---

**crowd** /kraʊd/ Noun

a *crowd* is a very large group of people in a place, for example in a shopping centre or at a sports event

*it's a sport that attracts big crowds | there was a huge crowd waiting to get in*

Adjective: *crowded*

- *foule*

---

**DJ** /'di:dʒeɪ/ Noun

a *DJ* is someone who chooses the music in a club or at an event and plays the CDs or records

*the DJ plays Brazilian music while the game is going on | she's a DJ at the local club*

Verb: *DJ*

- *DJ*

---

**draw** /drɔ:/ Verb

if you *draw* a sports match or game, you finish with the same number of points as the other person or team

*we drew our last match 1-1 | Aston Villa drew with Liverpool last Saturday*

Noun: *draw*

*Bournemouth scored in the last minute to get a draw*

- *faire match nul*

---

**earn** /ɜ:(r)n/ Verb

money you *earn* is the money you are paid for doing your job

Collocates: earn money

*I deliver newspapers before school in the morning to earn some money | how much does your dad earn?*

Noun: *earnings*

*average earnings rose again last year*

- *gagner*

**feature** /'fi:tʃə(r)/ Verb

to *feature* something means to include it as an important part

*the Olympic Games feature around thirty sports | the film features several well-known Hollywood actors*

Noun: *feature*

*a car with a lot of special features*

- *comporter*

**handle** /'hænd(ə)l/ Noun

a *handle* is the part of a device or tool that you hold in your hand when you are using it or if you have to pick it up

*the handle of the frying pan was too hot to hold | a plastic bucket with a metal handle*

- *poignée*

**home** /həʊm/ Adjective

in a sports competition, the *home* team is the team whose pitch is being used for the match

*I go to all of Slavia Prague's home games | the home team are wearing red*

Noun: *home* || Opposites – Adjective: *away* | Adverb: *away*

- *à domicile*

**kick** /kɪk/ Verb

if you *kick* something, you hit it with your foot

*I kicked the ball through my neighbour's window by mistake | I slipped when I was trying to kick the ball*

Noun: *kick*

*if the door won't open, give it a kick*

- *taper avec le pied*

**medal** /'med(ə)l/ Noun

a *medal* is a small round metal object that you sometimes get as a prize for winning a sports competition

Collocates: a gold/silver/bronze medal

*I won a medal at our school sports day | Steve Redgrave has won five gold medals at the Olympics (the prize for coming first)*

- *médaille*

**mistake** /mɪ'steɪk/ Noun

if you make a *mistake*, you do something wrong or bad, although you did not intend to

Collocates: by mistake | make a mistake

*I didn't make a single mistake in the maths exam | it was a big mistake to put so much salt in the soup*

- *erreur*

**opponent** /ə'pəʊnənt/ Noun

an *opponent* is someone who is competing against you

*you have to try and get the ball in your opponent's net |*

*it's a driving game where you race against different opponents*

- *adversaire*

**originally** /ə'ɒrɪdʒ(ə)nəli/ Adverb

if you describe how something *originally* happened, you are talking about how it started

*the game originally involved two teams on horses | the canal was originally just 20 km long*

- *à l'origine*

**outcome** /'aʊt,kʌm/ Noun

the *outcome* of a process or activity is the final result of it

*the final outcome was disappointing | the outcome of the election was a change of government*

- *résultat*

**pace** /peɪs/ Noun singular

the *pace* of something is how fast it moves or changes. If an athlete *sets the pace*, he or she goes at a fast speed and the other competitors have to try and go at that speed too

*they set off at a fast pace, but had to slow down as they got tired | the pace of change in the computer industry has been extreme*

- *allure*

**pass** /pɑ:s/ Verb

in a sport like football, if you *pass* the ball, you send it to another player on your team without letting an opponent get the ball

*Rooney passed to Kane who scored | I don't like playing in the same team as Richard; he never passes*

Noun: *pass*

*a thirty yard pass found Hansen over on the left*

- *faire une passe*

**prevent** /prɪ'vent/ Verb

if you *prevent* something, you stop it from happening

Collocates: prevent someone from doing something

*they try to prevent the other team from scoring | we do everything we can to prevent accidents*

Noun: *prevention*

*prevention of disease is better than treatment*

- *empêcher*

**race** /reɪs/ Verb

if you *race* somewhere, you go there very fast. In sport, if you *race*, you try to go a certain distance faster than the other people in the competition

*riders have to train hard before they are allowed to race | the rabbit raced across the road*

Noun: *race*

*who do you think will win the race?*

- *courir / faire la course*

**score** /skɔː(r)/ Verb

if you *score*, you succeed in getting a point during a game. The *score* in a match is the number of points each player or team has

*I scored twice but we still lost | Lineker scored 48 goals for England*

Noun: *score*

*what's the score?*

- *marquer des points*

**season ticket** /'siːz(ə)n ˌtɪkt/ Noun

a *season ticket* is a single ticket that allows you to go into a sports stadium or to make a journey by bus or train several times during a certain period of time

*I've got a season ticket, so I go to all the home games | the train costs £14 a day, but it's only £55 to buy a season ticket for a week*

- *abonnement annuel*

**set** /set/ Verb

if an athlete *sets the pace*, he or she goes at a fast speed and the other competitors have to try and go at that speed too. If someone *sets a standard*, they do something very well which means that other people have to try and do as well as that

*in keirin, a cyclist sets the pace until the last 600 or 700 metres when everyone starts to sprint | the first iPhone set the standard that other phone companies had to follow*

- *donner / fixer*

**strength** /streŋθ/ Noun uncount

*strength* is physical power that you get from your muscles *which sport do you think needs the most strength? | I need to build up my strength for the race next week*

Verb: *strengthen*

*I do exercises every morning to strengthen my muscles*

- *force*

**support** /sə'pɔː(r)t/ Verb

if you *support* a sports team, they are your favourite team and you always want them to win, and you watch them play whenever you can

*who do you support? | I've supported Real Madrid since I was a child*

Noun: *supporter*

*she's a keen Manchester United supporter*

- *encourager*

**throw** /θrəʊ/ Verb

if you *throw* something, you make it go through the air using a quick action to release it from your hand

Collocates: *throw something at something or someone*  
*how far can you throw a rugby ball? | some of the protestors threw stones at the police*

Noun: *throw*

*it was a good throw that went straight to the player*

- *lancer*

**time** /taɪm/ Verb

if you *time* something, you measure how long it takes

*I don't usually time myself, but I think I can swim 100 metres in about two minutes | he was timed at 3 minutes 59 seconds*

Noun: *time*

*my best time for the 200 metres is 23.7 seconds*

- *chronométrer*

**ugly** /'ʌɡli/ Adjective

something that is *ugly* does not look very nice at all

*the town hall is the ugliest building in my town | it was a very large and rather ugly car | the dog had an extremely ugly face*

Noun: *ugliness*

*there is so much ugliness in the world*

- *laid*

**violence** /'vaɪələns/ Noun uncount

*violence* is behaviour in which people fight or hit each other

*the sport was banned for a while because of violence | I think there was too much violence in that film*

Adjective: *violent*

*he was the victim of a violent attack in the street*

- *violence*

**win** /wɪn/ Verb

if you *win* a competition or game, you do better than everyone else who is taking part

*I once won a medal in a running race at school | everyone expected England to win the match, but Wales beat them in the end | Germany won the World Cup in 2014 | Spurs won 4–1 against Manchester City | I've never won anything playing sport | how did you get on at the chess match? Did you win? | Borg won Wimbledon five times, but never won the US Open*

Noun: *winner* | Adjective: *winning* || Opposite – Verb: *lose*  
*the winner will receive \$25,000 | the winner of three Olympic gold medals | he won the race in a winning time of 3 minutes 47 seconds | England lost to Wales by just three points | I hate losing | they lost the match by two goals to one*

- *gagner*

**STUDENT'S BOOK PAGES 48–49****baking** /'beɪkɪŋ/ Noun uncount

*baking* is the activity of making bread, cakes, pies, etc. that you cook in an oven

*I did some baking for my sister's birthday party | I really enjoy cooking, especially baking*

Verb: *bake* | Noun: *baker*

*bake the loaf for 40 minutes*

- *pâtisserie*

**commercial** /kə'mɜː(r)ʃ(ə)l/ Adjective

*commerce* is business. If something is *commercial*, it is related to business or making money

*it's a reaction against life becoming so commercial | the film was a commercial success (it earned a lot of money)*

- *commercial*

**debt** /det/ Noun

*debt* is the state of owing money to someone. A *debt* is an amount of money that you owe

Collocates: *be in debt | get into debt | get out of debt | run up a debt | pay back/pay off a debt*

*I hate being in debt | I managed to pay off all my debts once I got a job*

- *dette*

**depression** /dɪ'preʃ(ə)n/ Noun uncount

if you suffer from *depression*, you are very unhappy in a way that affects your everyday life

Collocates: *severe depression | mild depression*

*many people take pills for depression | patients with severe depression might spend some time in hospital*

Adjective: *depressed*

- *dépression*

**detailed** /'diːteɪld/ Adjective

something that is *detailed* has a lot of individual parts and features

*some designs are very detailed and complicated | a detailed description of the robber | I took detailed notes of the speech*

- *détaillé*

**difference** /'dɪfrəns/ Noun

if something makes a *difference*, it changes a situation and usually makes it better

*the extra money will definitely make a difference |*

*I tried talking to her again, but it made no difference (did not change the situation)*

- *différence*

**dramatic** /drə'mætɪk/ Adjective

something that is *dramatic* is very sudden and extreme and often surprising

*there was a dramatic increase in sales | you need to make a dramatic improvement if you're going to pass your exams*

Adverb: *dramatically*

*she had changed dramatically when she came back from university*

- *spectaculaire*

**escape** /ɪ'skeɪp/ Verb

if you *escape* something unpleasant, you succeed in getting into a situation where you can avoid it or not have to experience it

*we go to the mountains to escape the summer heat | she narrowly escaped a serious injury in the crash (she only just escaped)*

- *échapper à*

**fashion** /'fæʃ(ə)n/ Noun

*fashion* is the style of something that is popular for a time. If something is *in fashion*, it is popular and done, used, or worn by a lot of people for a time. If it is *out of fashion*, people no longer want to do it, use it, or wear it

Collocates: *in fashion | out of fashion*

*the Beatles' music will never go out of fashion | they talked about music, travel, and fashion*

Adjective: *fashionable* | Adverb: *fashionably*

- *mode*

**fill** /fɪl/ Verb

if you *fill* something, you make it full. If you *fill in* something, you add writing or colours to it

Collocates: *fill (in) something with something*

*the children were told to fill in the pattern with different colours | fill the saucepan with cold water*

- *remplir*

**growth** /grəʊθ/ Noun uncount

*growth* is an increase in the size or value of something

Collocates: economic growth

*the government has said economic growth is its main objective | population growth is a problem in some countries*

Verb: *grow*

- croissance

**make-up** /'meɪkʌp/ Noun uncount

*make-up* is different coloured stuff such as lipstick or powder that some people put on their faces to make themselves more attractive. Actors use *make-up* so that the audience can see them more clearly

*I need to buy some more lipstick and other make-up | don't forget to take your make-up off before you go to bed*

- maquillage

**moderate** /'mɒd(ə)rət/ Adjective

something that is *moderate* is not very large or small, and not extreme in any way

*regular moderate exercise offers three main benefits | bake for 45 minutes in a moderate oven (not very hot)*

Adverb: *moderately*

*the film was only moderately successful in the US*

- modéré

**occupy** /'ɒkjʊpaɪ/ Verb

if something *occupies* your mind or your attention, you spend time thinking about it and concentrating on it

*colouring tasks will completely occupy their attention for an hour | take a book to occupy yourself while you're waiting at the airport*

- occuper

**pattern** /'pætə(r)n/ Noun

a *pattern* is a series of shapes and lines that are repeated regularly on a surface

*the teacher got us to draw some complicated patterns | I love the pattern on your curtains*

Adjective: *patterned*

- motif

**personal** /'pɜː(r)s(ə)nəl/ Adjective

something that is *personal* relates to just one single individual and is not shared with anyone else

*they asked for my personal details (how old I am, where I live, etc.) | that's a very personal question (one that asks for information that people don't usually tell to strangers)*

Adverb: *personally*

*the concert was good, though personally I prefer Lady GaGa to Madonna*

- personnel

**publish** /'pʌblɪʃ/ Verb

to *publish* a book means to have it printed and made available for people to have or buy

*this book was originally published in the UK | my book's going to be published next year*

Noun: *publishing* | Noun: *publisher*

*she was hoping to get a job in publishing*

- publier

**rival** /'raɪv(ə)l/ Noun

a *rival* is someone who is trying to be more successful than you in an activity or competition

Collocates: someone's main/nearest/chief/closest/fiercest rival | a bitter/deadly rival

*Radcliffe finished nearly two minutes ahead of her nearest rival | they'd been bitter rivals for 20 years, but now they found friendship*

- rival

**task** /tɑːsk/ Noun

a *task* is a particular piece of work or activity that someone has to do

Collocates: give/set someone a task

*the task of colouring is similar for children and adults | fitting the glass in the window was not an easy task*

- tâche

**therapy** /'θerəpi/ Noun

*therapy* is treatment for physical or mental problems that does not involve drugs or surgical operations. People sometimes say *retail therapy* when they mean shopping in order to suggest that shopping is good for you

*I'd rather go to the gym than have therapy | what you need is some retail therapy to cheer you up!*

Noun: *therapist* | Adjective: *therapeutic*

- thérapie

**title** /'taɪt(ə)l/ Noun

the *title* of a book, play, film, etc. is its name

*when the publishers changed the titles, there was an increase in sales | the book was first published under the title Sing your Songs*

- titre

# 6 FAMILY AND FRIENDS

## STUDENT'S BOOK PAGES 52–53

### apartment /ə'pɑ:(r)tment/ Noun

an *apartment* is a set of rooms on one floor of a building, where someone lives or stays on holiday. The usual British word is *flat*

*we shared an apartment in Gas Street | my dad rented an apartment in Paris for a week*

- appartement

### aunt /ɑ:nt/ Noun

your *aunt* is the sister of your mother or father, or the wife of your uncle

*aunt Mabel is my dad's sister, which is why she looks like him | all my aunts were there at the party*

- tante

### close /kləʊs/ Adjective

if two people are *close*, they know each other very well and are strong friends

*there's a big gap between us, but we're very close | I was always closer to my mother than my father | I never made any close friends at university*

- proche

### closely /'kləʊsli/ Adverb

if you work *closely* with another person, you see them and talk to them a lot while you are doing a job together

*we work closely together | I worked very closely with her at the beginning of the project*

- étroitement

### colleague /'kɒli:g/ Noun

a *colleague* is someone you work with

*he was always bringing colleagues home to play chess | I get on with most of my colleagues, but I wouldn't say we're friends*

- collègue

### connection /kə'nekʃ(ə)n/ Noun

a *connection* is a relationship between people or things

Collocates: a connection between things or people

*is there any connection between the two crimes? | I'd never met him before, but we discovered we had a family connection*

- lien

### cousin /'kʌz(ə)n/ Noun

your *cousin* is a child of your uncle and aunt

*I'm going to stay with one of my cousins | she's a cousin on my mother's side (the daughter of my mother's brother or sister)*

- cousin(e)

### divorce /dɪ'vɔ:(r)s/ Verb

if married people *divorce*, they stop being legally married to each other

*she kept the house when we got divorced | he divorced his wife after just two years of marriage*

Noun: *divorce* | Adjective: *divorced*

*she told me she wants a divorce*

- divorce

### ex- /eks/ Prefix

someone's *ex-wife* is the woman they used to be married to. Someone's *ex-husband* is the man they used to be married to. When people talk about "my *ex*", they mean their former husband or wife

*my ex-wife still lives in our old house | her ex-husband still sends her a card on her birthday*

Noun: *ex*

*I haven't seen my ex since the day we divorced*

- ex-

### gap /gæp/ Noun

a *gap* is an empty space between two things. If you talk about a *gap* in two people's ages, you mean that one of them is quite a lot older than the other one

*in age, there's a big gap between me and my brother | there's a ten-year age gap between us*

- fossé

### get on /get 'ɒn/ Phrasal verb

if you *get on* with someone, you like them and have a friendly relationship with them

Collocates: get on with someone

*do you get on with the people you work with? | I never got on with my boss*

- s'entendre

### get to know /get/ Verb

if you *get to* do something, you succeed in doing it over a period of time. If you *get to know* someone, you become friendly with them over a period of time

Collocates: get to do something | get to know someone

*we got to know each other at university | I thought he was rude at first, but got to like him eventually*

- faire la connaissance de

**immediately** /ɪ'mi:diətli/ Adverb

if something happens immediately, it happens quickly and with no delay

*they moved next door last year and we immediately got on | come here immediately!*

Adjective: *immediate*

• *immédiatement*

**in-law** /ɪn lɔ:/ Suffix

your mother-in-law, brother-in-law, etc. is the mother or brother of your husband or wife. All the relatives of your husband or wife are your in-laws

*I get on really well with my mother-in-law | her brother-in-law moved to Australia last year*

Noun: *in-laws*

• *beau-*

**move** /mu:v/ Verb

if you *move*, or *move house*, you go and live in a different place

*I lived in Gas Street when I first moved here | we're moving house next week | I hate this house, but I can't afford to move*

• *déménager*

**neighbour** /'neɪbə(r)/ Noun

your *neighbours* are the people who live very near you, in the same street. Your next-door *neighbour* is a person who lives in the house or flat that is next to yours

Collocates: a next-door neighbour

*we're very lucky because our neighbours are lovely people | my next-door neighbour always plays loud music at the weekends*

• *voisin*

**partner** /'pɑ:(r)tnə(r)/ Noun

someone's *partner* is the person they live with but are not married to

*her partner works in a bank | my partner and I have been together for over 12 years*

• *conjoint*

**share** /ʃeə(r)/ Verb

if you *share* something with someone, you both use it or have it. If you *share* a house or flat with someone, you both live in the same house or flat

*I had to share a bedroom with my brother till I was 9 | I finally got a room to myself and no longer had to share*

Noun: *share*

*we've been in a house share for the last year with another couple*

• *partager*

**trip** /trɪp/ Noun

a *trip* is a journey you make somewhere

Collocates: a business trip | a school trip

*I met her on a business trip | we went on a trip down the river to Hampton Court*

• *voyage*

## STUDENT'S BOOK PAGES 54-55

**aspect** /'æspekt/ Noun

an *aspect* of something is one of the different parts involved in it

*I like the fashion and design aspect of the business |*

*you have to consider the practical aspects of living on a boat*

• *aspect*

**attitude** /'ætɪtju:d/ Noun

your *attitude* is how you think and feel about something

*it's important to have a positive attitude towards your exams | what I appreciated the most was their can-do attitude (their belief that they could succeed)*

• *attitude*

**bright** /braɪt/ Adjective

someone who is *bright* is very clever and intelligent

*my sisters are both very bright | she's the brightest kid in her class | he's not very bright, but he's brilliant at football*

• *intelligent*

**calm** /kɑ:m/ Adjective

someone who is *calm* is relaxed and not excited or upset

*my brother's always very calm and confident | I was surprised at how calm she was when the fire started*

Adverb: *calmly*

*he spoke calmly and quietly as he told her the sad news*

• *calme*

**character** /'kærɪktə(r)/ Noun

your *character* is all the qualities that you have, which make you what you are and make you different from everyone else. If you say that a place has *character*, you mean that it has a lot of interesting parts

Collocates: out of character

*my brother and I have quite similar characters | there's a nasty side to his character | the hotel we stayed in had real character*

• *caractère*

**communication** /kəˈmjʊːnɪˈkeɪʃ(ə)n/ Noun uncount  
*communication* is the process of exchanging information with someone by talking to them or sending messages to them  
*the problems happened because of poor communication* | *you need good communication skills to work in TV*  
 Verb: *communicate*  
*we communicated by email while I was away in Peru*

• communication

**comparison** /kəmˈpærɪs(ə)n/ Noun  
 if you compare two things or people, you look at them and decide what the differences are between them. The result is a *comparison* between them. If something seems true in *comparison* with something else, it is true, but different  
 Collocates: in comparison with something  
*I feel a bit stupid in comparison with my sisters* | *the comparison was unfair because my brother has always been taller than me*  
 Verb: *compare*  
*you can compare prices online*

• comparaison

**confident** /ˈkɒnfɪd(ə)nt/ Adjective  
 someone who is *confident* is sure of their own abilities and doesn't feel shy or nervous  
*he was confident that he would pass his exam* | *are you sure about this? You don't seem very confident*  
 Adverb: *confidently* | Noun: *confidence*  
*you should have more confidence in yourself*

• confiant

**control** /kənˈtrəʊl/ Verb  
 if you *control* something or *control* how much someone can do something, you check and limit the amount or level of it  
*we need to control our costs more efficiently* | *the government controls the oil industry very tightly*  
 Noun: *control*  
 Collocates: keep control of something | be under control | be out of control  
*you need to keep control of your spending*

• contrôler

**determined** /dɪˈtɜː(r)mɪnd/ Adjective  
 if you are *determined*, you do not let anything stop you from achieving your goals and doing what you want to do  
 Collocates: be determined to do something  
*she and I are both very determined people* | *he was determined to keep the news secret*  
 Noun: *determination*  
 Collocates: great determination | determination to do something  
*they played with great determination*

• déterminé

**figure** /ˈfɪɡə(r)/ Noun  
*figures* are numbers that represent amounts of something  
*she has a good head for figures (she can do things like adding up numbers very well)* | *last month's sales figures weren't very good*

• chiffre

**finance** /ˈfaɪnæns/ Noun  
*finance* is the way money is used and managed in business or in government  
*he left his job to come and work with me as finance director* | *the company's finances were steadily improving*  
 Adjective: *financial*  
*the financial crisis of 2008*

• finance

**frustrated** /frʌˈstreɪtɪd/ Adjective  
 someone who is *frustrated* feels angry or upset because something is stopping them doing what they are trying to do  
 Collocates: frustrated about something | feel frustrated | become/get frustrated  
*I feel very frustrated about this situation* | *frustrated customers have started to complain*  
 Adjective: *frustrating* | Verb: *frustrate* | Noun: *frustration*  
 Collocates: be frustrated by something | frustration at something  
*having to wait so long is incredibly frustrating*

• frustré

**grade** /ɡreɪd/ Noun  
 a *grade* is a number or letter that you get showing how well you did in a test or exam  
*they always get top grades* | *if you want to get a good grade, you'll have to work a lot harder than this*

• note

**grow** /grəʊ/ Verb

when a company *grows*, it develops and gets bigger and produces more things and earns more money. If a country's economy *grows*, business activity in the country increases and the total value of everything produced increases

*the company just grew and grew | after he took charge, he grew the company to become the biggest producer of tractors in the country*

Noun: *growth*

*the company's growth has slowed down*

- *se développer*

**guest** /gest/ Noun

a *guest* is a person who has been invited to a social event such as a party or wedding. People who are staying in someone's house or in a hotel for a short time are also called *guests*

*we're expecting over 200 guests at the wedding | one of the hotel guests complained about the food in the restaurant*

- *invité*

**hobby** /'hɒbi/ Noun

someone's *hobby* is an activity that they do regularly for pleasure

*he thought it was just a hobby | do you have any hobbies?*

- *hobby*

**model** /'mɒd(ə)l/ Noun

a *model* is someone whose job is to show off clothes by wearing them and being photographed, or by wearing them at a fashion show

Collocates: a fashion model

*she's a model, actress, and mother | communication between the photographer and the model is very important*

- *mannequin*

**networking** /'net,wɜ:(r)kiŋ/ Noun uncount

*networking* is the activity of talking to a lot of people who do the same sort of job as you and who might be useful for your work

*I hate networking and managing people | the group encourages networking face to face as well as online*

- *travail en réseau*

**open** /'əʊpən/ Adjective

people who are *open* are willing to speak honestly about what they think and how they feel, and do not hide things from other people

*we're always quite open with each other | we had an open discussion about it*

- *ouvert*

**patient** /'peɪj(ə)nt/ Adjective

someone who is *patient* is able to stay calm when something takes a long time and does not become angry or upset

Collocates: be patient with someone or something

*thanks for waiting, you've been very patient | Jack is always very patient with the children*

Noun: *patience* | Adverb: *patiently* || Opposites – Adjective: *impatient* | Adverb: *impatiently*

Collocates: lose your patience | have/require patience

*sorry, but I'm beginning to lose my patience (become angry)*

- *patient*

**poor** /pɔ:(r)/ Adjective

something that is *poor* is not very good

*I thought the food in the restaurant was very poor | his work was of very poor quality | a school with poor exam results*

- *médiocre*

**practical** /'præktɪk(ə)l/ Adjective

a person who is *practical* is good at doing things with their hands, like mending things or making things

*my brother's very practical, so I asked him to mend the lock on the door | it helps to have a few practical skills*

- *pratique*

**-run** /rʌn/ Suffix

you add *-run* to the end of nouns and adverbs to describe the way something is organised. For example, a *family-run* business is owned and managed by members of the same family, and a *well-run* school is a good school that is managed very well

*we stayed in a very well-run hotel in the city centre | the state-run railways in France are very efficient*

- *géré*

**shout** /ʃaʊt/ Verb

if you *shout*, you say something in a very loud voice, for example, because you are angry

Collocates: shout at someone

*calm down! You don't have to shout | Tim shouted upstairs that it was time to go*

Noun: *shout*

*we heard shouts of delight coming from the children's bedroom*

- *crier*

**sort out** /,sɔ:(r)t 'aʊt/ Phrasal verb

if you *sort* something *out*, you deal with it so that it is no longer untidy or a problem

*you need to sort out your room. It's a mess | We had a big argument, but we've sorted it out now and we're friends again*

- *ranger*

**strict** /strikt/ Adjective

someone who is *strict* makes sure people obey rules all the time

Collocates: be strict with someone

*the school applies strict discipline | she's very strict with her children*

Adverb: *strictly*

*children were brought up more strictly in those days*

- *strict*

**stupid** /'stju:pid/ Adjective

someone or something that is *stupid* is not very clever or sensible

*that was a stupid question! | don't be so stupid | I didn't want to look stupid, so I kept quiet*

- *stupide*

**succeed** /sək'si:d/ Verb

if you *succeed*, you do what you were trying to do

*she doesn't stop until she succeeds at something | I succeeded in getting a job in advertising*

Noun: *success* | Adjective: *successful*

*there are several reasons for the team's success*

- *réussir*

**supportive** /sə'pɔ:(r)tɪv/ Adjective

if people are *supportive*, they understand your situation and help you

*my husband was very supportive when I decided to start the company | luckily, I've got a supportive boss*

Noun: *support* | Verb: *support*

*he was always there, offering support and encouragement*

- *qui est d'un grand soutien*

-IVE	
Some adjectives are formed from verbs by adding <i>-ive</i> .	
a <b>supportive</b> family	<b>support</b> me in whatever I do
a <b>creative</b> person	<b>create</b> a work of art
a <b>competitive</b> industry	<b>compete</b> for the post of CEO
an <b>imaginative</b> idea	I can <b>imagine</b>
an <b>impressive</b> result	<b>impress</b> your boss

**take over** /,teɪk 'əʊvə(r)/ Phrasal verb

when one company *takes over* another company, it becomes the new owner and the two companies combine to become one company

*who do you think will take over the business? | half the directors left as soon as the firm was taken over*

Noun: *takeover*

Collocates: a takeover bid | a hostile takeover

*Murdoch launched a takeover bid in early December (an attempt to take over a company)*

- *absorber*

**tidy** /'taɪdi/ Adjective

if a room is *tidy*, the things in it are in their place and it is very neat. If a person is *tidy*, they are good at keeping their things neat and well organised

*Nick's office is always very tidy | I'm not a very tidy person*

Adverb: *tidily* | Verb: *tidy* || Opposite – Adjective: *untidy*

*put your things away tidily before you go upstairs*

- *bien rangé*

**wedding** /'wedɪŋ/ Noun

a *wedding* is a ceremony at which two people get married

Collocates: a wedding reception | a wedding guest | a wedding ceremony

*my sister's wedding was a fantastic occasion | we spent months preparing for the wedding*

- *mariage*

**welcome** /'welkəm/ Verb

if you *welcome* someone, you greet them in a friendly way when they arrive

*we're always happy to welcome people into our home | they welcomed us with open arms when we arrived*

Noun: *welcome*

Collocates: a warm welcome

*you're sure to receive a warm welcome there (a very friendly welcome)*

- *accueillir*

**STUDENT'S BOOK PAGES 56–57**

**accept** /ək'sept/ Verb

if you *accept* an invitation, you say yes to it

*I accepted her friend request because I like to make new contacts | they've accepted our invitation to the party*

- *accepter*

**block** /blɒk/ Verb

to *block* something means to put an object across or in it in which stops something else from moving through or along it. If you *block* someone on the Internet, you change your settings so that you do not see any messages from that person

*I deleted his request and blocked him | a fallen tree was blocking the road*

Noun: *block*

*I want to put a block on all his emails*

- *bloquer*

**comment** /'kɒment/ Verb

if you *comment* or *comment* on something, you say what you think about it. If you *comment* on something on the Internet, you write what you think about it on the site where it appeared

*lots of people commented on the photos | anyone can comment on my blog posts*

Noun: *comment*

Collocates: post a comment | submit a comment

*you must be registered to post comments here*

- *commenter*

**delete** /dɪ'li:t/ Verb

if you *delete* something that is on your computer, you remove it.

*I deleted the file by mistake | she read the message, then deleted it*

- *supprimer*

**expect** /ɪk'spekt/ Verb

if you *expect* something, you think it will happen or arrive

Collocates: expect someone or something to do something

*I didn't expect him to get so angry | I'm here to see Mr Edwards. He's expecting me*

Noun: *expectation*

*the restaurant met all our expectations (it was as good as we hoped it would be)*

- *attendre*

**face to face** /,feɪs tə 'feɪs/ Adverb

if you do something with someone *face to face*, you are both in the same place at the same time, rather than talking by email or on the phone

*we arranged to meet face to face | they came face to face outside the station*

Adjective: *face-to-face*

*I wanted a face-to-face meeting with him*

- *face à face*

**for instance** /fə(r) 'ɪnstəns/ Noun

you use *for instance* when you are beginning to give an example of what you are talking about

*for instance, I recently read about a girl who posted pictures of her friend on the web | there are several questions we need to ask. For instance, how did he get into the building?*

- *par exemple*

**hide** /haɪd/ Verb

if you *hide* something, you put it somewhere where people cannot see it or find it. If you *hide* something on the Internet, you deliberately make sure that it does not appear on your social media pages

*I hide all his posts | you can hide comments from people you don't like*

- *dissimuler*

**ignore** /ɪg'nɔ:(r)/ Verb

if you *ignore* something, you do not pay any attention to it. If you *ignore* a question or request, you deliberately do not reply to it

*I usually ignore online quizzes | I had a request to friend someone I've never heard of, so I ignored it*

- *ignorer*

**in touch** /ɪn 'tʌtʃ/ Phrase

if you are *in touch* with someone, you still see them and talk to them or write to them sometimes. If you *lose touch*, you stop seeing them or talking to them, especially when they move to a different town

Collocates: keep/stay in touch (with someone) | lose touch (with someone) | get in touch (with someone)

*how do you keep in touch with your friends? | we still keep in touch on Facebook*

- *en contact*

**inappropriate** /ɪnə'prəʊpriət/ Adjective

something that is *inappropriate* is not suitable in a particular situation

*inappropriate behaviour can lead to a student being sent home early | several comments on the blog post were considered to be inappropriate and were removed*

Opposite – Adjective: *appropriate*

*the only appropriate response is to say you're sorry*

- *déplacé*

**inspiring** /ɪn'spaɪərɪŋ/ Adjective

something that is *inspiring* makes you believe in something very strongly, especially in your own ability to achieve things

*my cousin often posts inspiring quotes | I thought the film was really inspiring*

Verb: *inspire* | Noun: *inspiration* | Adjective: *inspirational* ||

Opposite – Adjective: *uninspiring*

Collocates: inspire someone to do something  
*her example inspired thousands of girls to take up football*

- *exaltabt*

**message** /'mesɪdʒ/ Noun

a *message* is something you send to someone containing information, a question, etc.

Collocates: send someone a message | get/receive a message

*I sent him a message asking him to remove the photo | I thought you'd be expecting me. Didn't you get my message?*

- *message*

**post** /pəʊst/ Verb

if you *post* a *letter*, you send it to someone in an envelope with a stamp on it so that it will be delivered to them. When you *post* something on the Internet, you put it on a website so that lots of people can see it if they want to

*she posted lots of photos of her holiday on Facebook | can you post this letter for me if you're going out?*

Noun: *post*

*there was an interesting post on her blog last week*

- *publier*

**quiz** /kwɪz/ Noun

a *quiz* is a set of questions that you have to answer in a competition or a game

*my sister often takes online quizzes | did you see that quiz about capital cities of the world?*

- *quiz*

**quote** /kwəʊt/ Verb

a *quote* is a sentence or saying that someone said or wrote that gets repeated by a lot of people

*one of my cousins is always posting inspiring quotes, like "Follow your dreams" | "To be, or not to be" is a famous quote from Shakespeare*

Verb: *quote*

*we're expected to quote from the poems in the exam*

- *citation*

**remind** /rɪ'maɪnd/ Verb

to *remind* someone of something means to make them remember it

Collocates: *remind someone about something | remind someone of someone or something | remind someone to do something*

*can you remind me to buy petrol | she reminded me about my doctor's appointment | he reminds me of my brother (he looks like my brother)*

- *rappeler*

**remove** /rɪ'mu:v/ Verb

if you *remove* something, you take it away from where it is

*I asked him to remove the photo | the police removed some cars from the main shopping street*

Noun: *removal*

*removal of the seat cover is quite easy*

- *retirer*

**reply** /rɪ'plɑɪ/ Verb

if you *reply* to someone, you give them an answer

Collocates: *reply to someone | reply that*

*he became cross and replied angrily that he'd never been there before | did she ever reply to your question about the summer holiday?*

Noun: *reply*

*I asked him three times but never got a reply*

- *répondre*

**smile** /smaɪl/ Verb

if you *smile*, the ends of your mouth go up slightly to show that you are pleased or happy about something

Collocates: *smile at someone*

*she smiled to herself when she heard the news | I couldn't stop smiling when I got my exam results*

Noun: *smile*

*she greeted us at the door us with a smile*

- *sourire*

**status** /'stetəs/ Noun

on a social networking site, someone's *status* is their description of themselves, saying what they are doing or thinking about at the time

*I've blocked him from seeing my status updates | her status says "in a relationship" (she has a boyfriend or girlfriend)*

- *statut*

**stream** /stri:m/ Verb

a *stream* is a broadcast of a TV programme over the Internet

*we found a live stream and watched the game online | because of technical problems, the stream ended early*

Verb: *stream* | Noun: *streaming*

*the concert will be streamed live from Wembley*

- *retransmettre*

**update** /'ʌpdeɪt/ Noun

an *update* is information about a situation or process, describing what has happened recently. When people post *updates* about themselves on a social media site, they say what has changed in their lives recently

*one of my friends is always posting funny status updates | I read his updates on Facebook every week*

Verb: *update*

*if you get married, you'll have to update your status on Facebook*

- *mise à jour*

---

## STUDENT'S BOOK PAGES 58–59

---

**combination** /ˌkɒmbɪˈneɪʃ(ə)n/ Noun

a *combination* of things is a number of different things all mixed together

*the show was a combination of music and dance | there's a combination of reasons for the decision*

Verb: *combine*

• *combinaison*

---

**found** /faʊnd/ Verb

to *found* an institution or a regular event means to start it and provide the money it needs to continue

*Michael Eavis founded the Glastonbury Festival | the RSPCA was founded in 1824*

Noun: *founder*

*the founders wanted the school to take both boys and girls*

• *fonder*

---

**neighbourhood** /ˈneɪbə(r)hʊd/ Noun

your *neighbourhood* is the area of the town or city around where you live

*we live in a nice neighbourhood | everyone in the neighbourhood knows my dad*

• *quartier*

---

**personal** /ˈpɜː(r)s(ə)nəl/ Adjective

something that is *personal* relates to just one single individual and is not shared with anyone else

*my personal view is that we should wait another year | my personal finances*

Adverb: *personally*

• *personnel*

---

**stand for** /ˈstænd fɔː(r)/ Phrasal verb

letters that *stand for* something are the first letters of words and are used as an abbreviation

*what does WOMAD stand for? | NATO stands for North Atlantic Treaty Organisation*

• *signifier*

---

# 7 YOUR PLACE

## STUDENT'S BOOK PAGES 62–63

**agriculture** /'ægrɪ,kʌltʃə(r)/ Noun uncount

*agriculture* is the work of growing plants and keeping animals for food

*it's a rural area with a lot of farms and agriculture | now, less than 5% of the population work in agriculture*

Adjective: *agricultural*

• *agriculture*

**bank** /bæŋk/ Noun

the *banks* of a river are the areas of land along the side of it  
*I live near the river, and you can walk for miles along the banks | their house is on the south bank of the river*

• *rive*

**border** /'bɔː(r)də(r)/ Verb

the *border* between two countries is the line that marks where one country stops and the other begins. An area that *borders* a country or other area is right next to it  
*an area in the south-west of Scotland that borders England | a Chinese province that borders Vietnam*

Noun: *border*

*Portugal has one land border, and that's with Spain*

• *frontière*

**climate** /'klaɪmət/ Noun

the *climate* of an area is the sort of weather it typically has over a year

Collocates: a wet/dry climate | a hot/warm/cold/cool climate | climate change

*countries in northern Europe have a cold climate | on holiday, the climate was warm but not too hot*

• *climat*

**desert** /'dezə(r)t/ Noun

a *desert* is a large area of land where there is not much rain and not many plants can grow

*he's on an army base out in the middle of the desert | to the south is an arid desert (very dry)*

• *désert*

**farm** /fɑː(r)m/ Noun

a *farm* is a large area in the country with several fields, used for growing plants and keeping animals for food. The people who own and work on farms are farmers

*my family have a farm where they grow rice | a dairy farm (with cows for milk and cheese)*

Noun: *farmer*

• *ferme*

**field** /fiːld/ Noun

a *field* is an area of land on a farm used for growing plants or for keeping animals

*I enjoy walking in the fields near my house | a field of potatoes*

• *champ*

**financial** /faɪ'nænʃ(ə)l/ Adjective

*financial* things and activities are related to money and the control of money

*Switzerland is a financial centre with a lot of banks | I have some financial problems*

Adverb: *financially* | Noun: *finance*

*he's been very successful financially*

• *financier*

**geography** /dʒi:'bɒɡrəfi/ Noun uncount

*geography* is the study of different countries and areas in the world

*my geography isn't very good (I don't know where places are) | she's studying geography at Oxford*

• *géographie*

**get round** /'get ,raʊnd/ Phrasal verb

if you can *get round* a town or city, or *get around* it, you can find your way and go from one part to another

*it's an easy city to get round | take this map – it will help you get around*

• *se déplacer*

**green** /griːn/ Adjective

if a place is *green*, there are lots of trees and parks there. *Green* also means connected to the protection of the environment

*we need more green spaces | the company is trying to be more green (trying to help the environment) | a discussion about green issues*

• *verdoyant / écologique*

**halfway** /'haːfweɪ/ Adverb

*halfway* means at the middle point between two things, or at the middle point between the beginning and end of something

Collocates: halfway between something | halfway through something

*it's halfway between Edinburgh and Glasgow | we got about halfway up the mountain*

Adjective: *halfway*

Collocates: the halfway point

• *à mi-chemin*

**historic** /hɪ'stɔːrɪk/ Adjective

a *historic* place is old and was important at some time in history. *Historic* events were very important when they happened, and are still remembered

*Nantes is a historic city in the West of France | the city has a lot of historic buildings*

- historique

**industrial** /ɪn'dʌstriəl/ Adjective

industry is the activity of making things in factories.

*Industrial* activities and places are related to industry  
*the north of the country is very industrial | there's a problem with industrial pollution here*

Noun: *industry*

Collocates: heavy/light industry

*the region developed because of its heavy industry (making very big products)*

- industriel

**murder** /'mɜː(r)də(r)/ Verb

to *murder* someone means to commit the crime of deliberately killing them

*he murdered his boss | her husband was kidnapped and murdered last year*

Noun: *murder* | Noun: *murderer*

- tuer

**ocean** /'əʊʃ(ə)n/ Noun

an *ocean* is a large area of water, bigger than a sea

*the Atlantic Ocean | who was the first person to cross the ocean between Europe and America?*

- océan

**off** /ɒf/ Preposition

if somewhere is *off* a larger place, it is close to it or connected to it but not in it or on it

*it's an island off the west coast | South Road is off Queen's Road*

- à l'écart de

**plant** /plɑːnt/ Noun

a *plant* is a factory where things are made

*there's a car plant to the south of the city | a nuclear power plant*

- usine

**pollution** /pə'ljuːʃ(ə)n/ Noun uncount

*pollution* is things like chemicals and smoke from factories that damage the air that we breathe or the rivers and land

Collocates: air pollution | noise pollution | industrial pollution

*air pollution is a big problem in London | people near the airport suffer from noise pollution*

Verb: *pollute* | Adjective: *polluted*

- pollution

**port** /pɔː(r)t/ Noun

a *port* is a place by the edge of the sea where boats can arrive and leave from

*Murmansk is an important port in the north-west of Russia | all around the port you can hear the sounds of boat building*

- port

**right** /raɪt/ Adverb

if something is *right* in front of you, *right* behind you, *right* alongside you, etc., it is exactly in that position

*it's a small town right up on the north coast | he stood right in the middle of the road*

- juste

**rural** /'rʊərəl/ Adjective

something that is *rural* is in the countryside or connected to the countryside

*in many rural areas there are no bus services | only 5% of the rural population had been to university*

- rural

**spread** /spred/ Verb

if something *spreads*, it moves or grows and affects a larger area

Collocates: spread through an area | spread to somewhere  
*the city's huge and spreads a long way down the coast | unfortunately, the cancer continued to spread | the fire spread quickly through the farm buildings*

- s'étendre

**steal** /sti:l/ Verb

to *steal* something that does not belong to you means to commit the crime of taking it and keeping it without permission

Collocates: steal something from something or someone  
*a man was arrested after stealing 10 kilos of bananas | someone stole my phone when I was in the restaurant | thieves stole jewellery worth £10,000 from her hotel room*

- voler

**steel** /sti:l/ Noun uncount

*steel* is a strong metal, made from iron and carbon

*the steel industry is very important in this region | the windows have steel frames*

- acier

**surround** /sə'raʊnd/ Adjective

to *surround* a place or person means to be all around them on all sides

*the city is surrounded by nice countryside | she was surrounded by hundreds of music fans*

- entouré

**tiny** /'taɪni/ Adjective  
something that is *tiny* is very small  
*it's a tiny village in the centre of the country | each fruit contains thousands of tiny seeds*

• minuscule

**wall** /wɔ:l/ Noun  
a *wall* is a structure made of brick or stone that separates one area from another  
*there used to be a wall round the whole city | four prisoners jumped over the wall and escaped*

• mur

## STUDENT'S BOOK PAGES 64–65

**affect** /ə'fekt/ Verb  
to *affect* something means to change it or have some sort of influence on it, usually in a bad way  
*if they refuse to go, it could affect their career | a disease that affected his ability to think*

Noun: *effect*

*her death had a major effect on my life*

• affecter

**army** /'ɑ:(r)mi/ Noun  
a country's *army* is all the soldiers whose job is to fight when there is a war  
*I spent two years in the army after I left school | the British army had to leave France in 1940*

• armée

**base** /beɪs/ Noun  
a *base* is a place where military people live and work  
*an army base | the pilot managed to return to base even though the plane had been damaged*

• base

**career** /kə'riə(r)/ Noun  
someone's *career* is the job that they do over the period of their working life  
*she had a long career in the newspaper business | Robert began his career with an engineering firm in Derby*

• carrière

**develop** /dɪ'veləp/ Verb  
if something *develops*, or if you *develop* it, it changes over time and becomes better, more efficient, or more complete. If a country *develops*, it starts to have more industry and use more advanced technology  
Collocates: *develop into something*  
*it's better to stay and help your country develop | a market town that developed into a capital city*  
Adjective: *developed* | Noun: *development*  
*the rate of development in China has increased rapidly*

• développer

**freedom** /'fri:dəm/ Noun uncount  
*freedom* is the right or ability to do what you want without anyone stopping you  
*I love the freedom to do what I want | we believe in equality and freedom of speech (the ability to say whatever you want)*  
Adjective: *free*  
Collocates: *be free to do something*  
*you are free to leave whenever you want*

• liberté

**home** /həʊm/ Noun  
a *home* is a place where people live and are looked after because they are too old, young, or ill to look after themselves  
*his parents died and he was brought up in a care home from the age of 8 | after her husband died, she moved into a nursing home*

• maison de retraite

**junior** /'dʒu:niə(r)/ Adjective  
*junior* employees are starting their careers and do not have much experience yet  
*she's a junior lecturer at Imperial College | a junior minister in the department of education*  
Opposite – Adjective: *senior*  
*my father's a senior partner in a law firm*

• subalterne

**liberal** /'lɪb(ə)rəl/ Adjective  
someone who is *liberal* believes that people should have the freedom to do and think what they want to  
*luckily, my parents are quite liberal and my friends can stay overnight | she has very liberal views on religion and social issues*

• libéral

**lift** /lɪft/ Noun  
a *lift* is a small room that can carry people up and down inside a building so that they do not have to climb the stairs  
Collocates: *take a lift*  
*let's take the lift – we're going to the ninth floor | the lift was out of order (not working) so we had to walk up to the sixth floor*

• ascenseur

**member** /'membə(r)/ Noun  
a *member* is someone who belongs to an organisation or group of people  
*I'm a junior member of staff here | we're both members of the local tennis club*  
Noun: *membership*

• membre

**military service** /ˈmɪlɪ(ə)ri ˌsɜː(r)vɪs/ Noun uncount  
in some countries, *military service* is a system in which every adult has to spend some time in the army. People usually do their *military service* after they leave school  
*in Britain, there has been no compulsory military service since 1960 | I avoided military service because my eyesight wasn't good enough*

• service militaire

---

**overseas** /ˈəʊvə(r)sɪz/ Adverb  
if you live or work *overseas*, you live or work in a foreign country. If you travel *overseas*, you travel to a foreign country  
*he often travels overseas for work | they live overseas*  
Adjective: *overseas*  
*overseas trade became very important in the 19th century*

• à l'étranger

---

**refuse** /rɪˈfjuːz/ Verb  
if you *refuse* to do something, you say that you do not want to do it and that you will not do it  
Collocates: *refuse to do something*  
*I asked my boss for a pay rise again, but he refused | she refused point blank to apologise (refused completely)*  
Noun: *refusal*  
*his refusal to co-operate was disappointing*

• refuser

---

**reputation** /ˌreɪpjuˈteɪʃ(ə)n/ Noun  
the *reputation* of a person, place, or organisation is how good or bad people say it is  
Collocates: *have a reputation for something*  
*the restaurant has a reputation for bad service | the company earned its reputation through the quality of its products*

• réputation

---

**residence** /ˈrezɪd(ə)ns/ Noun  
*residence* is the fact of living somewhere. A *residence* is a building where people live  
*a university hall of residence (where students live) | the museum was formerly a private residence*  
Noun: *resident* | Adjective: *residential*

• résidence

---

**respect** /rɪˈspekt/ Noun uncount  
*respect* for someone is a belief that they are important and that they should be treated well and politely  
Collocates: *treat someone with respect | have respect for someone | show respect*  
*the staff treat all the customers with respect | I have a lot of respect for your mother*  
Verb: *respect* | Adjective: *respected* | Adjective: *respectful* | Adverb: *respectfully*  
Collocates: *be respectful of/towards someone or something*

• respect

---

**secure** /sɪˈkjʊə(r)/ Adjective  
something that is *secure* is safe and is not going to change or be taken away from you  
*if you pass your medical exams, your future will be secure | a child should always feel safe and secure in the home*  
Noun: *security* | Verb: *secure*  
*job security is a very important consideration*

• sécurisé

---

**side** /saɪd/ Noun  
a particular *side* of a situation is a particular aspect of it that is being described  
Collocates: *the funny/bright side of something/someone | a positive/negative side*  
*on the positive side, I'm learning a lot | I don't think he could see the funny side of it*

• côté

---

**sink** /sɪŋk/ Noun  
a *sink* is an open container in a kitchen or bathroom that you can fill with water and use for washing things  
Collocates: *a kitchen/bathroom sink*  
*the kitchen sink was very dirty | put the dishes in the sink*

• évier / lavabo

---

**split** /splɪt/ Verb  
if you *split* something, you divide it into smaller parts which are usually equal  
*shall we split the bill? (each pay an equal amount) | we'll split the money 50-50 (have half each) | split the cake into five pieces*

• diviser

---

**terribly** /ˈterəbli/ Adverb  
you use *terribly* to say how extreme or unpleasant an action or situation is  
*I miss my kids terribly | I could see from his face that something had gone terribly wrong*  
Adjective: *terrible*  
*you're making a terrible mistake*

• terriblement

---

**treat** /trɪt/ Verb

to *treat* someone in a particular way means to behave towards them in that way

*the staff treat all the customers with respect | they treated me as one of the family*

Noun: *treatment*

*all the children in my class get equal treatment – I have no favourites*

- *traiter*

**turn** /tɜː(r)n/ Noun

if people take *turns* to do something, one person does it, then another person does it, and so on, so that everyone has the chance to do it

Collocates: take turns to do something | someone's turn to do something

*we take turns to clean the bathroom | whose turn is it to make the dinner?*

- *tour*

**STUDENT'S BOOK PAGES 66–67****bite** /baɪt/ Verb

to *bite* something means to use your teeth to cut into it or make a hole in it

*he's a lovely dog — he won't bite | I was bitten by a snake when I was a child*

Noun: *bite*

*he took a bite out of the apple*

- *mordre*

**blanket** /'blæŋkɪt/ Noun

a *blanket* is a large, thick piece of cloth that you use as a cover to keep yourself warm when you are in bed

*there's another blanket here in case you get cold in the night | the blanket slid off the bed during the night and I woke up really cold*

- *couverture*

**borrow** /'bɒrəʊ/ Verb

if you *borrow* something from someone, they let you use it for a while, and then you give it back to them. Compare *lend*

Collocates: borrow something from someone

*can I borrow an umbrella? | I had to borrow some money from my father to buy the car*

- *emprunter*

**charger** /'tʃɑː(r)dʒə(r)/ Noun

a *charger* is a device that puts electricity back into batteries so that you can use them again. Batteries that let you do this are called rechargeable batteries

*can I borrow your phone charger? | unplug the charger when it's not in use*

- *chargeur*

**clear** /kliə(r)/ Verb

if you *clear* a place, you remove things from it that are no longer needed and make it tidier

*shall I help you clear the table? | can you clear the glasses from the tables? | the area was thoroughly cleared of rubbish*

- *débarrasser*

**credit** /'kredɪt/ Noun uncount

*credit* is an arrangement for you to be able to spend a certain amount of money and pay later. *Credit* on your mobile phone is the amount of money you can spend on making calls or sending texts. If you run out of *credit*, you have to pay more money before you can use the phone again

Collocates: run out of credit

*I've run out of credit on my phone | how much credit have you got left?*

- *crédit*

**drawer** /'drɔːə(r)/ Noun

a *drawer* is a sort of box in a piece of furniture that can slide in and out, and that you can keep things in

Collocates: the top/middle/bottom drawer

*I keep my passport in the top drawer of my desk | the knives are in one of the kitchen drawers*

- *tiroir*

**hang** /hæŋ/ Verb

if you *hang* something somewhere, you put it so that it is held at the top, and the bottom doesn't touch the ground

*you can hang your coat on the back of the door | I shouldn't have left my bag hanging from the back of my seat | he took off his jacket and hung it on the back of the chair*

- *accrocher*

**host** /həʊst/ Noun

your *host* is the person whose home you are staying in, or the person who has invited you to an event such as a party

*we need to take a present for our host | our host welcomed us at the door*

Verb: *host*

- *hôte*

**introduce** /,ɪntrə'djuːs/ Verb

if you *introduce* people, you tell each of them the other's name when they are meeting for the first time

*I'll introduce you to everyone in a minute | John, Alastair – have you been introduced?*

- *présenter*

**kiss** /kɪs/ Verb

if you *kiss* someone, you touch their face or hand with your lips as a sign of love or affection

*we kissed each other goodbye | I love to kiss and hug my children*

Noun: *kiss*

Collocates: give someone a kiss

*she gave the children a goodnight kiss*

- *embrasser*

**lend** /lend/ Verb

if you *lend* someone something, you let them have it for a short time, and then they give it back to you.

*can you lend me some money? I left my wallet at home | he wanted me to lend him my car*

- *prêter*

**lock** /lɒk/ Noun

a *lock* is a device on a door that can stop people opening the door unless they have a key

*there's no lock on the bathroom door | we had to change the lock because the burglars stole our keys*

Verb: *lock* || Opposite – Verb: *unlock*

- *verrou*

**log off** /'lɒg ɒf/ Phrasal verb

if you *log off* or *log out*, you tell your computer that you are going to stop it using it by giving it a particular instruction. If you *log on* or *log in*, you put in your password to start using the computer

*you don't need to log off – just press the off switch | it keeps a record of all activity, and says you logged off at 4:30 yesterday afternoon*

Opposite – Phrasal Verb: *log on* or *log in*

*if you can't remember your password, you won't be able to log in*

- *se déconnecter*

**press** /pres/ Verb

if you *press* something, you push on it with your finger or hand

*press the button to call the lift | which switch do I press to get the light to come on?*

- *appuyer sur*

**repeat** /rɪ'pi:t/ Noun

a *repeat* is a programme on television that has already been on at least once before

*you'll have to watch repeats of The Big Bang Theory | they put out a lot more repeats during the summer*

Verb: *repeat*

- *rediffusion*

**sharp** /ʃɑ:(r)p/ Adjective

something that is *sharp* has a very thin edge or point and can cut things easily

*careful! The knife's very sharp | that dog's got really sharp teeth*

Opposite – Adjective: *blunt*

*I can't use this knife, it's too blunt*

- *affûté*

**wardrobe** /'wɔ:(r)dɹəʊb/ Noun

a *wardrobe* is a large cupboard where you hang your clothes

Collocates: a fitted/built-in wardrobe

*there were two wardrobes in the bedroom | a built-in wardrobe (which is part of the house and cannot be moved)*

- *penderie*

# 8 EDUCATION

## STUDENT'S BOOK PAGES 70–71

### finals /'faɪn(ə)lz/ Noun plural

*finals* are the exams that university students take at the end of their course

*I've got my finals next term | she's sitting her finals next month (taking the exams)*

Adjective: *final*

*what happens if you fail your final exams?*

- examens de dernière année

### fluent /'flu:ənt/ Adjective

if you are *fluent*, you speak a language easily and without making mistakes

Collocates: be fluent in something | a fluent speaker

*I won't become fluent in English if I don't work hard enough | he is a fluent speaker of German*

Adverb: *fluently* | Noun: *fluency*

*she writes very fluently*

- qui s'exprime aisément

### graduate /'grædʒueɪt/ Verb

when you *graduate*, you are given your degree after you finish your university course. A student who successfully graduates is a *graduate* ('grædʒuət)

Collocates: graduate from something

*when I graduated, I wanted to find a job in the media | I graduated in 2005 | she graduated from Oxford with a degree in law*

Noun: *graduate*

*graduates are likely to start jobs on a higher salary*

- obtenir son diplôme

### Master's /'mɑ:stə(r)z/ Noun

a *Master's* or a *Master's degree* is a university qualification that you can get which is higher than a first degree

Collocates: a Master's in something | do a Master's

*it took two years to get my Master's | he has a Master's degree in engineering*

- maitrise

### media /'mi:diə/ Noun

the *media* is television, radio, newspapers, magazines, etc. which prepare and send out information and entertainment for people to watch, listen to, or read

Collocates: media coverage | mass media

*I tried for months to get a job in the media | she's written a book about the influence of the mass media (newspapers, TV, etc. that are seen by large numbers of people)*

- médias

### nursery /'nɜ:(r)s(ə)ri/ Noun

a *nursery* is a place where very young children are looked after while their parents are at work. In Britain, a *nursery school* is a school for very young children between three and five years old

*my youngest daughter starts nursery next month | I've known him since we were at nursery school together*

- crèche

### off /ɒf/ Adverb

if you have time *off* or take time *off*, you spend a period of time not working or studying but doing something different

Collocates: take time off | be off

*I need to take the day off on Friday | I can't take any time off till we've finished the project*

- en congé

### pass /pɑ:s/ Verb

if you *pass* a test or exam, you succeed in it

Collocates: pass a test/exam

*she passed her driving test first time | if you don't pass this time, you'll have to take the exam again in January*

Opposite – Verb: *fail*

*I was ill for two weeks before the exam, so I expected to fail*

- réussir

### promise /'prɒmɪs/ Verb

if you *promise* to do something, you say that you will definitely do it

Collocates: promise someone something | promise to do something

*my parents have promised me they'll buy me a car if I pass my exams | will you promise to be home by 10 o'clock?*

Noun: *promise*

Collocates: make (someone) a promise | keep a promise | break a promise

*politicians are always making promises and then breaking them (not doing what they said they would do)*

- promettre

**retake** /ri:'teɪk/ Verb

if you *retake* an exam, you take it again because you did not pass it the first time

*If I don't get a good enough score, I'll have to retake the exam in a couple of months | he had to retake the exam twice before he finally passed*

Noun: *retake*

*I can't come out tonight, I'm revising for my retake tomorrow*

- *repasser son examen*

**save** /seɪv/ Verb

if you *save* money, you keep it so that you can use it later, rather than spending it straight away. The money that you keep is your savings

*I'm saving money for my university fees | I saved over £500 last year*

Noun: *savings*

*I had to use my savings to get the car repaired*

- *économiser*

**system** /'sɪstəm/ Noun

a *system* is all the related parts of a process or machine that work together to produce a result

*our education system is very efficient | the heating system has broken down*

- *système*

**term** /tɜ:(r)m/ Noun

a *term* is one of the periods of time into which a school or university year is divided

*I've got my final exams next term | we never do much work on the last day of term*

- *trimestre*

**year** /jɪə(r)/ Noun

a school *year* or a university *year* is the period that starts in September and ends in July when students are at school or university

*my brother's in his second year at university | what year are you in?*

- *année*

**STUDENT'S BOOK PAGES 72–73**

**approach** /ə'prəʊtʃ/ Noun

your *approach* to something is the particular way you do it or think about it

Collocates: take an approach | an approach to something  
*the school has a traditional approach to teaching | other governments took a different approach to the problem*

Verb: *approach*

- *approche*

**atmosphere** /æt'mɒs,fɪə(r)/ Noun

the *atmosphere* of a place is the feeling you get when you are there

*the school has a good atmosphere | I didn't like the atmosphere at the party so I left early*

- *ambiance*

**bullying** /'bʊliɪŋ/ Noun uncount

*bullying* is behaviour in which someone deliberately hurts or tries to frighten someone else who is weaker than them  
*there's no violence or bullying in the school | we will not tolerate bullying here (will not allow it)*

Verb: *bully* | Noun: *bully*

- *brimades*

**-ING NOUNS**

The *-ing* form of a verb is often used to make a noun, especially to describe an activity.

*There's no **bullying** in this school.*

*I do **babysitting** to earn some extra money.*

*I go **swimming** every day.*

***Parking** is really difficult in the city centre.*

*We sat in the **waiting** room for two hours.*

**compulsory** /kəm'pʌlsəri/ Adjective

if something is *compulsory*, you must do it because of a law or rule

*English and Maths are both compulsory subjects at my school | I had to do two years of compulsory military service*

Opposite – Adjective: *optional*

*Geography and History are optional subjects, but we suggest you do both*

- *obligatoire*

**copy** /'kɒpi/ Verb

if you *copy* something, you write it out exactly in the way it has already been written somewhere else. If you *copy* someone else's work, you write what they wrote and say it is your own work

*we weren't supposed to copy straight out of the textbook | if you're caught copying, you'll be punished*

Noun: *copy*

*she was given a copy of the agreement to sign*

- *copier*

**deal with** /'di:l wɪð/ Phrasal verb

if you *deal with* something, you do what is necessary to make sure that everything is in order. If you *deal with* a difficult situation, you do what is necessary to stop it being a problem

*how do you deal with bad behaviour? | it's time we dealt with this problem*

- *s'occuper de*

**essay** /'eseɪ/ Noun

an *essay* is a piece of writing in which someone writes about a particular topic

Collocates: write an *essay*

*I have to write an essay on Shakespeare for homework | hand your essays in by Friday lunchtime*

- *dissertation*

**fail** /feɪl/ Verb

if you *fail* a test or exam, you do not succeed in it

*I was worried that I'd fail | over half my class failed their French test*

Opposite – Verb: *pass*

*she passed her driving test first time*

- *échouer*

**get into** /,get 'ɪntuː/ Phrasal verb

if you *get into* a school or university, you succeed in being accepted there as a student

*it's really difficult to get into Harvard or Yale | she got into university when she was just 17*

- *entrer dans*

**mixed** /mɪkst/ Adjective

things that are *mixed* involve different parts, some good and some bad. If you have *mixed* feelings about something, you are not sure how you feel about it

Collocates: have *mixed* feelings/emotions

*my first impressions of the school were a bit mixed | he's got mixed feelings about working for a tobacco company*

- *mitigé*

**qualification** /,kwɒlɪfɪ'keɪʃ(ə)n/ Noun

a *qualification* is a piece of paper that shows you have passed certain exams or finished a particular course of study successfully

*what qualification do you get at university? | she's got excellent academic qualifications*

Adjective: *qualified*

- *qualification*

**resource** /rɪ'zɔː(r)s/ Noun

*resources* are things that are available to be used, and that are useful

*the Internet is a valuable resource | the country is rich in natural resources (oil, gas, coal, etc.)*

- *ressource*

**set** /set/ Verb

if you *set* some work, you give it to someone and ask them to do it

*she forgot to set our homework for the weekend | I set myself a target of learning 50 words a week*

- *donner*

**state** /steɪt/ Adjective

a *state* organisation is one that is paid for by the government of a country for anyone to use

*my brothers all went to a state school | you'll qualify for a state pension at the age of 66*

Opposite – Adjective: *private*

*private education is very expensive in the UK*

- *d'État*

**stressed** /strest/ Adjective

if you are *stressed*, you are very worried about something and cannot relax

*I got really stressed before my driving test | you look stressed – why don't you have a day off?*

Noun: *stress*

Collocates: be under *stress*

*he's under a lot of stress at the moment, which is why he looks so unhappy*

- *stressé*

**stuff** /stʌf/ Noun uncount

in informal English, you can use *stuff* as a general word to refer to any kind of thing or collection of things without saying exactly what they are

*we did football and boxing and stuff like that | we did a lot of fun stuff at the holiday camp*

- *choses*

**technological** /,teknə'lɒdʒɪk(ə)l/ Adjective

*technological* things involve machines and are based on science and modern knowledge

*we have good technological resources here | there has been a lot of technological development over the last ten years*

Adverb: *technologically* | Noun: *technology*

*a technologically advanced machine*

- *technologique*

**test** /test/ Noun

a *test* is a set of questions that you have to answer in order show how much you know about a subject

*I'm revising for my geography test | did you pass the test?*

Verb: *test*

*we were tested twice a week in maths*

- *contrôle*

**textbook** /'teks(t),bʊk/ Noun

a *textbook* is a book used in schools or universities, which gives a lot of information about a particular subject

*textbooks are very expensive | can I borrow your textbook for a few minutes?*

- *manuel*

**translate** /træns'leɪt/ Verb

to *translate* means to change written or spoken words from one language into another

Collocates: translate from/into something

*can you translate this into Russian for me? | his book has been translated into 12 different languages*

Noun: *translation* | Noun: *translator*

*an accurate translation*

- *traduire*

## STUDENT'S BOOK PAGES 74–75

**advantage** /əd'vɑ:ntɪdʒ/ Noun

an *advantage* is something you have which gives you a better chance of success than the people you are competing with

Collocates: be at an advantage | have an advantage | an unfair advantage

*I had the advantage of being able to speak French which helped me get the job | she had an unfair advantage because her parents gave her so much money*

Opposite – Noun: *disadvantage*

Collocates: be at a disadvantage

*we were at a disadvantage because we arrived late*

- *avantage*

**arrest** /ə'rest/ Verb

when the police *arrest* someone, they take them away as a prisoner because they think the person has committed a crime

Collocates: arrest someone for something

*police arrested him last night at the house where the body was found | a man was arrested after stealing 10 kilos of bananas*

Noun: *arrest*

Collocates: be under arrest | put someone under arrest

*he was under arrest for murder*

- *arrêter*

**challenge** /'tʃæləndʒ/ Verb

if you *challenge* someone, you ask them to prove that they are honest or truthful because you think they have done something wrong

*it's not possible to challenge everyone who might be cheating | he challenged my account of the accident*

- *mettre à l'épreuve*

**claim** /kleɪm/ Verb

if you say that someone *claimed* that something was true, you mean that they said it was true but you do not believe them

*she claimed that she had a degree, but I know that she never went to university | he still claims that he is innocent*

Noun: *claim*

*the company made some false claims about the quality of its products*

- *prétendre*

**complete** /kəm'pli:t/ Verb

if you *complete* something, you finish doing all of it

*I managed to complete two levels on my new computer game | he left before the project was completed*

Adjective: *complete* | Noun: *completion*

*most of my coursework is complete for this term*

- *terminer*

**contrary** /'kɒntrəri/ Adjective

if something is true *contrary* to what people think, it really is true, although most people do not realise it and think the situation is different

Collocates: contrary to something

*contrary to expectations, it's not only weaker students who cheat | contrary to common belief, the average age of becoming a grandparent is 51*

- *contraire*

**declare** /dɪ'kleə(r)/ Verb

if you *declare* something, you make a formal and official statement saying it is true

*he was in trouble because he didn't declare all his income last year | the government declared a state of emergency*

Noun: *declaration*

*the American Declaration of Independence*

- *déclarer*

**desire** /dɪ'zaɪə(r)/ Noun

someone's *desire* for something is their strong wish to have or achieve that thing

Collocates: a desire for something | a desire to do something | a strong desire

*they have a genuine desire to learn | she had a strong desire for success*

Verb: *desire* | Adjective: *desirable*

- *désir*

**earn** /ɜ:(r)n/ Verb

money you *earn* is the money you are paid for doing your job

*top football players earn millions of pounds a year | she earns a fortune (a lot of money)*

Noun: *earnings*

*average earnings rose again last year*

• *gagner*

**effort** /'efə(r)t/ Noun

*effort* is the work involved in trying to do something. If you make an *effort* to do something, you try very hard to do it

Collocates: make (an) effort | take effort | put effort into something

*it took a lot of effort to get the piano up the stairs | if you don't make an effort, you'll never pass the exam*

• *effort*

**emphasis** /'emfəsis/ Noun

*emphasis* is special importance that something has, which affects the way you deal with it

Collocates: place/put emphasis on something

*kids are growing up in a world where great emphasis is placed on money and winning | the emphasis here is on speaking and listening rather than reading and writing*

• *accent*

**expenses** /ɪk'spensɪz/ Noun plural

your *expenses* are the amounts of your own money that you spend in the course of doing your job, and that your employer gives back to you separately from your salary

Collocates: claim expenses

*several politicians were caught lying about their expenses | the company owes me hundreds of pounds in expenses*

• *dépenses*

**impatient** /ɪm'peɪʃ(ə)nt/ Adjective

someone who is *impatient* loses interest or becomes angry or upset when something takes a long time

*technology can make people impatient | he was very impatient with his children*

Adverb: *impatiently* || Opposites – Adjective: *patient* |

Adverb: *patiently*

*the captain shook his head impatiently*

• *impatient*

**offer** /'ɒfə(r)/ Verb

if something *offers* an opportunity, it makes it available

*cheating offers a way to succeed without trying | the university offers courses in medicine as well as in science and computing | the job offers me good career opportunities*

• *offrir*

**pressure** /'preʃə(r)/ Noun

*pressure* is a feeling of worry that you have when you know that it is important for you to succeed in doing something

Collocates: be under pressure | put pressure on someone

*kids are under extreme pressure to succeed | my dad put a lot of pressure on me to get into Oxford*

• *pression*

**pretend** /prɪ'tend/ Verb

if you *pretend*, you behave in a way that deliberately suggests something about you that is not true

Collocates: pretend to do something

*I pretended the essay was all my own work | she had decided to pretend that nothing had happened | we all thought he'd hurt himself, but he was only pretending*

• *prétendre*

**profit** /'prɒfɪt/ Noun

*profit* is money that you get by selling something or doing business. Your *profit* is the difference between the amount it cost you to produce the thing you sold and the amount you received when you sold it

Collocates: make a profit | sell something at a profit | profits rise/fall

*the company made a profit of £10m last year | profits rose for the third year in a row*

• *bénéfice*

**push** /pʊʃ/ Verb

if you *push* someone to do something, you make them do it by encouraging them very firmly or forcing them to do it

Collocates: push someone to do something | push someone into doing something

*parents and schools often push kids to get the best test scores | they pushed me into going to university*

• *pousser*

**question** /'kwɛstʃ(ə)n/ Verb

if you *question* someone, you ask them what they think about something

*the majority of the students questioned said they had cheated | the survey questioned travellers as they returned to the UK from India*

• *interroger*

**resign** /rɪ'zaɪn/ Verb

if you *resign*, you say officially that you are going to leave your job

Collocates: resign from something | resign as something | resign something

*she had to resign when she was caught lying about her expenses | he's resigning from his post as sales director*

Noun: *resignation*

Collocates: offer/submit your resignation | accept/reject someone's resignation

*the committee reluctantly accepted her resignation*

- démissionner

**survey** /'sɜ:(r)veɪ/ Noun

a *survey* is a set of questions that a lot of people are asked in order to find out what their opinions are

Collocates: carry out a survey | conduct a survey

*in a recent survey, many students said they cheated | the survey was carried out online and by phone*

Verb: *survey*

- enquête

**tax** /tæks/ Noun

*tax* is money that you have to pay to the government. *Income tax* is a part of your earnings that you have to pay, and *purchase tax* or *sales tax* is part of the price of something that you buy which goes to the government

Collocates: income tax | sales/purchase tax

*there's a 6% sales tax on top of the original price | income tax was raised to 24% last year*

Verb: *tax*

*any income over £60,000 is taxed at 40%*

- taxe

**technology** /tek'nɒlədʒi/ Noun

*technology* is the use of science and modern knowledge in making machines

Collocates: new/modern technology

*students are using technology to help them cheat | modern technology has helped economic growth*

Adjective: *technological*

*there has been a lot of technological development over the last ten years*

- technologie

**tempt** /tempt/ Verb

if something *tempts* you, or if you are *tempted* by it, it makes you want to do it or have it, although you think you shouldn't

Collocates: be tempted to do something | tempt someone to do something

*of course people are tempted to cheat | weren't you tempted by the offer?*

Adjective: *tempting* | Noun: *temptation*

Collocates: resist temptation

*we received a very tempting offer for the house*

- tenter

**value** /'vælju:/ Verb

if you *value* something, you think it is good and important

*some schools value test scores more than real learning | I value my friendship with you*

- apprécier

**STUDENT'S BOOK PAGE 76****expand** /ɪk'spænd/ Verb

if something *expands*, it increases in size or number

*student numbers expanded by 20% last year | do you have any plans to expand the business operation in Hong Kong?*

Noun: *expansion*

*we have exciting plans for expansion*

- agrandir

**gene** /dʒi:n/ Noun

your *genes* are the parts in the cells of your body that control what you look like and other things about your body

*they've found the gene that causes the disease | we pass on our genes to our children*

Adjective: *genetic*

*the disease is caused by a genetic defect (a problem in someone's genes)*

- gène

**muscle** /'mʌs(ə)l/ Noun

your *muscles* are the parts of your body that give you the strength to move your body, lift things, push things, etc.

*my leg muscles really hurt | I pulled a muscle when I was out running (I stretched a muscle too much and it is painful)*

- muscle

# 9 MIND AND BODY

## STUDENT'S BOOK PAGES 80–81

### ache /eɪk/ Verb

if a part of your body *aches*, you feel a pain there that lasts for a long time

*I've got a temperature and my whole body aches | my legs were aching from all that cycling*

Noun: *ache*

*as you get older, you get more aches and pains*

#### • *faire mal*

### allergy /'ælə(r)dʒi/ Noun

if you have an *allergy*, you become ill or your skin becomes covered with red marks when you eat, breathe, or touch a particular thing

Collocates: an allergy to something | a food/nut allergy

*Jamie has an allergy to milk products | food allergies are becoming more common*

Adjective: *allergic*

Collocates: be allergic to something

#### • *allergie*

### appetite /'æpətaɪt/ Noun

your *appetite* is the feeling that you want food. If someone has a good *appetite*, they can eat a lot of food. If you lose your *appetite*, you do not want to eat because you feel ill

Collocates: lose your appetite | a healthy/good appetite

*I've got a high temperature and I've lost my appetite | my son has a healthy appetite*

#### • *appétit*

### concentrate /'kɒns(ə)nˌtreɪt/ Verb

when you *concentrate*, you think very carefully about what you are doing and do not allow yourself to think about anything else

Collocates: concentrate on (doing) something

*I can't concentrate on anything when I have a headache | he concentrated on reading the report*

Noun: *concentration*

*I lost concentration when Andy started singing*

#### • *se concentrer*

### cough /kɒf/ Verb

if you *cough*, you force air out of your throat suddenly, with a short loud noise. If you feel ill and are *coughing* a lot, you have a *cough*

*when I have asthma, I cough a lot at night | I was trying not to cough at the concert*

Noun: *cough*

#### • *tousser*

### decision /dɪ'sɪʒ(ə)n/ Noun

if you make a *decision*, you choose what you are going to do or have

Collocates: make a decision | a decision to do something | come to a decision

*she made the decision to go back to France | it's a difficult choice, but we've finally come to a decision*

Verb: *decide*

Collocates: decide to do something

#### • *décision*

### depressed /dɪ'prest/ Adjective

if you are *depressed*, you are feeling very unhappy

*I've been feeling quite depressed since I retired | he became severely depressed after losing his job*

Verb: *depress* | Adjective: *depressing* | Noun: *depression*

Collocates: deeply depressing

*news from the farm was deeply depressing*

#### • *déprimé*

### flu /fluː/ Noun uncount

*flu* or *the flu* is a common illness. It is like a very bad cold but can become very serious

*I think I've got the flu | she's been in bed with flu*

#### • *grippe*

### hay fever /'heɪ ˌfiːvə(r)/ Noun uncount

*hay fever* is a sort of illness that makes you cough and sneeze when you are near plants

*do you suffer from hay fever? | have you taken anything for your hay fever? (have you taken any medicine?)*

#### • *rhume des foins*

### hurt /hɜː(r)t/ Verb

if part of your body *hurts*, or if something *hurts* you, you feel pain there

*my knee really hurts | when I woke up, my neck was still hurting*

Adjective: *hurt*

*no one was hurt in the accident*

#### • *faire mal*

### nosebleed /'nəʊzˌbliːd/ Noun

if you have a *nosebleed*, blood comes out from the inside of your nose

*I often get a nosebleed if I go on a plane | you should see a doctor – that's your third nosebleed this week*

#### • *saignement de nez*

**out of breath** /ˌaʊt əv 'breθ/ Phrase

your *breath* is the air that you take into your body as you breathe

Collocates: be/get out of breath | hold your breath | get your breath back | be short of breath | take a (deep) breath

*I get out of breath very easily (I find it difficult to breathe after exercise) | take a deep breath so I can listen to your chest*

Verb: *breathe*

Collocates: breathe in | breathe out

- essoufflé

**pill** /pɪl/ Noun

a *pill* is a small, solid piece of medicine that you swallow  
*the doctor gave me some pills for my asthma | I have to take two pills in the morning and three in the evening*

- pilule

**rash** /ræʃ/ Noun

a *rash* is an area of red spots that you get on your skin if you eat or come into contact with something that makes you ill  
Collocates: come out in a rash

*I get a horrible red rash all over my body | when I'm stressed, I come out in a rash*

- rougeur

**sneeze** /sni:z/ Verb

if you *sneeze*, you suddenly force a lot of air out your nose or mouth without being able to prevent it, for example, when you have a cold

*my eyes get red and I sneeze all the time | he was coughing and sneezing all night | he sneezed loudly*

Noun: *sneeze*

*the disease can spread through coughs and sneezes*

- éternuer

**sore** /sɔ:(r)/ Adjective

if a part of your body is *sore*, it is painful and uncomfortable  
*I've got a sore throat | my feet are sore after walking all day*

- douloureux

**suffer** /'sʌfə(r)/ Verb

if you *suffer*, you feel the bad effects of something

Collocates: suffer from something

*I suffer from hay fever every summer | he suffered a heart attack*

Noun: *sufferer* | Noun: *suffering*

*asthma sufferers don't need drugs*

- souffrir

**swallow** /'swɒləʊ/ Verb

when you *swallow*, you make food or drink go from your mouth into your stomach

*the tablets were too big to swallow | she swallowed a fish bone by accident*

- avalier

**sweat** /swet/ Verb

if you *sweat*, water comes out through your skin, for example, because you are very hot after exercise or because you are ill

*I feel hot and cold, and I'm sweating a lot | the heat was making me sweat*

Noun: *sweat* | Adjective: *sweaty*

*sweat was running down his back*

- suer

**temperature** /'temprɪtʃə(r)/ Noun

if you have a *temperature*, your body is too hot because you are ill

Collocates: have a temperature | a high temperature | take someone's temperature

*he had a high temperature so his mother kept him off school | when I took her temperature (measured it) it was 38.5°*

- fièvre

**throat** /θrəʊt/ Noun

your *throat* is the area at the back of your mouth and inside your neck

*I've got a sore throat | he cleared his throat before speaking (coughed a little to make it easier to speak)*

- gorge

**upset stomach** /ˌʌpset 'stʌmək/ Noun

if you have an *upset stomach*, you feel sick because of something you have eaten

*too many sweets gave me an upset stomach | he was sent home from school with an upset stomach*

Verb: *upset*

- maux d'estomac

**voice** /vɔɪs/ Noun

your *voice* is the sounds you make when you speak or sing, and your ability to make those sounds

Collocates: a high/deep/low voice

*I'm losing my voice (it's difficult for me to speak because of a problem with my throat) | don't raise your voice (don't shout)*

- voix

**STUDENT'S BOOK PAGES 82–83****blood pressure** /'blʌd ,preʃə(r)/ Noun uncount

your *blood pressure* is the force with which blood moves around your body. If your *blood pressure* is too high or too low, it can make you ill

Collocates: high/low blood pressure | take someone's blood pressure

*I'm taking pills for high blood pressure | the doctor took my blood pressure (measured it)*

- pression artérielle

**damage** /'dæmɪdʒ/ Verb

if you *damage* something, you harm it or break it

*her voice wasn't damaged during the operation | a lot of buildings were damaged by the storm*

Noun: *damage*

*the shop suffered serious damage in the fire*

- abimer

**dry** /draɪ/ Verb

to *dry* something that is wet means to make it dry

*his body heat actually dried the sheet! | leave the towels in the kitchen, they'll dry overnight*

Adjective: *dry*

*leave the windows open until the paint is dry*

- sécher

**effect** /ɪ'fekt/ Noun

an *effect* is something that happens because of something else

Collocates: have an effect (on something)

*smoking can have a serious effect on your health | these chemicals can have a bad effect on the environment*

- effet

**emotional** /ɪ'məʊʃ(ə)nəl/ Adjective

something that is *emotional* involves someone's feelings rather than reason and facts

*his reaction was less emotional than I'd expected | she gave me a lot of emotional support after my father died*

Adverb: *emotionally* | Noun: *emotion*

*I was physically and emotionally exhausted*

- émotionnel

**exercise** /'eksə(r)saɪz/ Noun

*exercise* is physical activity that you do to try and get fit or stay fit

*you need more exercise | try these exercises to help your back muscles*

Verb: *exercise*

*she exercises for 20 minutes every morning*

- exercice

**experiment** /ɪk'sperɪmənt/ Noun

an *experiment* is a scientific test that you do to see what happens under certain conditions

Collocates: do/conduct/carry out/perform an experiment | an experiment shows/proves something

*the experiment showed no harmful effects of the drug | the experiment was carried out twice to make sure the results were accurate*

Verb: *experiment* | Adjective: *experimental*

- expérience

**give up** /,gɪv 'ʌp/ Phrasal verb

if you *give up* something that you do regularly, you stop doing it

Collocates: give up doing something

*It's really hard to give up smoking | my parents gave up their restaurant business and went back to Scotland*

- arrêter

**healthcare** /'helθ,keə(r)/ Noun uncount

*healthcare* is a system that provides doctors and hospitals for all the people in a country. Some *healthcare* systems are private, and people have to pay for them, but some countries provide healthcare for everyone and pay for it out of taxes

*in America, healthcare is mostly private | campaigners demanded universal free healthcare (free for everyone)*

- système de santé

**illness** /'ɪlnəs/ Noun

if you have an *illness*, you are ill

Collocates: suffer (from) an illness | a serious illness | a terminal illness | mental illness

*it's important to try and prevent illness | she suffered from a serious illness*

Adjective: *ill*

Collocates: be taken ill | fall ill

- maladie

**injured** /'ɪndʒə(r)d/ Adjective

if you are *injured*, part of your body has become damaged, for example, in an accident

*two people were seriously injured in the accident | the injured player was taken to hospital*

Noun: *injury* | Verb: *injure*

Collocates: suffer an injury | a serious injury | a fatal injury

*he suffered a serious injury when he fell off his motorbike*

- blessé

**injury** /'ɪndʒəri/ Noun

if you suffer an *injury*, part of your body gets damaged, for example, in an accident

Collocates: suffer an injury | a serious injury | a fatal injury  
*police say the injuries were not life-threatening (not likely to cause death) | a fatal head injury (an injury that killed someone)*

Verb: *injure* | Adjective: *injured*

• *blesure*

**insurance** /ɪn'ʃʊərəns/ Noun uncount

*insurance* is an agreement in which you pay money regularly to a company, and they will pay the costs if something bad happens to you

Collocates: an insurance policy

*most people have private health insurance | the damage is covered by your insurance (your insurance will pay to repair it)*

Verb: *insure*

Collocates: insure someone or something against something

• *assurance*

**measure** /'meɪʒə(r)/ Verb

if you *measure* something, you use some equipment to find out something such as the size, length, height or amount of it. If something *measures* a certain amount, that is how big it is

*doctors can measure the physical changes that take place | when I measured the kitchen, it was 14 feet long*

Noun: *measurement*

*you need to take an accurate measurement of the water temperature*

• *mesurer*

**mind** /maɪnd/ Noun

your *mind* is your thoughts

Collocates: spring/come to mind | cross someone's mind | have something in mind

*can the power of the mind keep you in good health? | it never crossed my mind to ask Angela (I never considered asking her)*

• *esprit*

**notice** /'nəʊtɪs/ Verb

if you *notice* something, you start to see it, hear it, feel it, or smell it

*did you notice that funny smell? | I shaved my beard off, but no one in the office noticed*

Adjective: *noticeable*

*raising the price has had no noticeable effect on sales*

• *remarquer*

**operation** /,ɒpə'reɪʃ(ə)n/ Noun

if someone has an *operation*, doctors cut into their body in order to repair it or take something out

*he had an operation on his knee | she needed an emergency operation*

Verb: *operate*

Collocates: operate on someone

• *opération*

**patient** /'peɪʃ(ə)nt/ Noun

a *patient* is someone who is being cared for in a hospital or being treated by a doctor

*my doctor has a good relationship with all her patients | the patient was discharged the following day (sent home from hospital)*

• *patient*

**percentage** /pə(r)'sentɪdʒ/ Noun

a *percentage* is an amount of something which is described as if it is part of a total of 100. A high or large *percentage* of something is a large amount or quantity of it

*a percentage of people get these side effects from a sugar pill | the percentage of Welsh speakers in the school rose to 24%*

• *pourcentage*

**physical** /'fɪzɪk(ə)l/ Adjective

something that is *physical* is connected to a person's body rather than their mind

*doctors can measure the physical changes that take place | I am in excellent physical and mental health*

Adverb: *physically*

*you need to be physically fit to do this job*

• *physique*

**power** /'paʊə(r)/ Noun

*power* is an ability to do something

*I wish I had the power of flight (I wish I could fly) | the power of positive thinking*

• *pouvoir*

**practise** /'præktɪs/ Verb

to *practise* an activity means to do it regularly, especially in order to become better at doing it

*you'll never be able to play the guitar well if you don't practise | I practised my dance moves every day*

Noun: *practice*

*I do an hour's piano practice a day*

• *pratiquer*

**prepare** /prɪ'peə(r)/ Verb

if you *prepare*, you do everything that is necessary for you to be ready for a particular situation or for you to do a particular action

*firstly, you need to prepare yourself for the heat | I wasn't properly prepared for the interview?*

Noun: *preparation*

*the key to success is good preparation*

- *se préparer*

---

**reaction** /ri'ækʃ(ə)n/ Noun

your *reaction* to something is what you do, say, or think as a result of it

*what was her reaction when you told her you were resigning? | her speech provoked an angry reaction*

Verb: *react*

Collocates: react to something

- *réaction*

---

**receive** /rɪ'si:v/ Verb

if you *receive* something, you get it after someone has given it to you or has sent it to you. *Receive* is slightly formal, and the usual word is *get*

*I still haven't received the parcel | did you receive my email?*

- *recevoir*

---

**recovery** /rɪ'kʌv(ə)ri/ Noun

someone's *recovery* from an illness is the process in which they get better and become well again

Collocates: make a recovery | a recovery from something | a complete/full recovery

*she's making a good recovery from the flu | he left hospital yesterday after a very quick recovery*

Verb: *recover*

- *récupération*

---

**side effect** /'saɪd ɪ'fekt/ Noun

*side effects* are unpleasant effects of a medicine

Collocates: suffer (from) side effects

*most drugs and medicines have side effects | some patients suffer side effects*

- *effet secondaire*

---

**treatment** /'tri:tmənt/ Noun uncount

when a doctor *treats* a patient or an illness, he or she give someone medicine or other things to make them better. This activity is *treatment*

*medical treatment is expensive if you don't have insurance | he was rushed to hospital for treatment*

Verb: *treat*

- *traitement*

---

**trick** /trɪk/ Noun

a *trick* is an action or statement that makes you believe something that is not true

Collocates: play a trick (on someone)

*the effect is not just a trick of the mind | that was a dirty trick (something that was unfair)*

Verb: *trick*

Collocates: trick someone into doing something

- *ruse*

---

**STUDENT'S BOOK PAGES 84–85****avoid** /ə'vɔɪd/ Verb

if you *avoid* something, you make sure you do not do it or experience it

*avoid contact with your eyes | try to avoid repeating words when you write | I think Sam is avoiding me (trying not to see me or speak to me)*

- *éviter*

---

**bend** /bend/ Verb

if you *bend*, you move part of your body so that it is not straight

Collocates: bend forward/down/over

*stand up straight, then bend your knees | she bent down and picked up the letter*

Adjective: *bent*

*his arm was bent across his chest*

- *plier*

---

**brush** /brʌʃ/ Verb

a *brush* is an object with thin, stiff pieces of plastic, wire, or hair which you use to clean things, paint things, or make your hair tidy. If you *brush* something, you clean it or tidy it using a brush

*I didn't have time to brush my hair | Harold brushed the dirt off his coat*

Noun: *brush*

*a hair brush*

- *brosser*

---

**burn** /bɜ:(r)n/ Noun

a *burn* is damage to your skin caused by fire or heat

Collocates: suffer burns

*the burn doesn't look too bad | he suffered burns but escaped serious injury*

Verb: *burn*

*I burnt my hand taking the bread out of the oven*

- *brûlure*

---

**contact** /'kɒntækt/ Noun uncount  
contact happens when one thing touches another thing  
Collocates: come into contact with something  
*have you ever come into contact with an infected person?*  
*| if physical contact occurs, wash the affected body part immediately*

• contact

**course** /kɔː(r)s/ Noun  
a course of treatment is all the medicine you have to take until you are well again  
*complete the full course | a course of daily injections*

• cure

**cure** /kjʊə(r)/ Noun  
a cure for an illness is something that stops the illness and makes someone well again  
Collocates: a cure for something  
*do you know of a cure for hiccups? | there's no cure for the common cold*  
Verb: cure | Adjective: curable || Opposite –  
Adjective: incurable  
Collocates: cure someone of something

• remède

**deep** /di:p/ Adjective  
something that is deep goes a long way from the surface to the bottom  
*that's a deep cut you've got | the swimming pool is three metres deep at this end*  
Adverb: deep | Noun: depth  
*it was buried deep inside the mountain*

• profond

**deep** /di:p/ Adjective  
a deep breath involves taking as much air into your lungs as you can  
Collocates: a deep breath  
*take a deep breath, then let the air out slowly | she let out a deep sigh*  
Adverb: deeply  
*Lucien breathed deeply and closed his eyes*

• profond

**dose** /dəʊs/ Noun  
a dose of medicine is the amount that a doctor tells you to take at one time  
*do not exceed three doses in 24 hours | the doctor decided to change the dose after a week*

• dose

**effective** /ɪ'fektɪv/ Adjective  
if something is effective, it succeeds in doing what it is meant to do  
Collocates: highly effective  
*I took some pills, but they weren't very effective | it's a highly effective (very effective) method of keeping flies out of the kitchen*  
Adverb: effectively | Noun: effectiveness  
*how do you effectively manage a team?*

• efficace

**exceed** /ɪk'si:d/ Verb  
to exceed an amount or rate means to be more than that amount or faster than that rate  
*do not exceed three doses in 24 hours | the total price won't exceed £200 | it's against the law to exceed the speed limit*

• dépasser

**external** /ɪk'stɜː(r)n(ə)l/ Adjective  
external means on the outside of something  
*this medicine is for external use only (for your skin, not to be eaten) | the computer has an external hard drive | the external walls of the house*

• externe

**heal** /hi:l/ Verb  
if an injury heals, it recovers and becomes well again  
*how long did it take for the cut to heal? | it's healed nicely (well)*

• quérir

**knock** /nɒk/ Verb  
if you knock something, you touch or hit it by accident, especially so that it moves or falls to the floor  
Collocates: knock something off/over/down  
*she knocked a cup of coffee off the table | Rob tripped on a wire and managed to knock the whole computer over*

• heurter

**lift** /lɪft/ Verb  
if you lift something, or lift it up, you move it to a higher place  
Collocates: lift someone or something up  
*sit down and lift your leg in the air | he has to lift heavy objects*  
Noun: lifting  
*don't do any heavy lifting because you'll hurt your back*

• soulever

**mix** /mɪks/ Verb

if you *mix* things, you put them together so that they are all together in one place

*mix the pills with water and take after meals | heat the ingredients until they are melted and mixed into a sauce*

Noun: *mixture*

*stir the mixture until it comes to the boil*

- *mélanger*

**prescription** /prɪ'skrɪpʃ(ə)n/ Noun

a *prescription* is an amount of medicine that a doctor has told you to take. A *prescription* is also a piece of paper from the doctor which tells a chemist exactly what medicine to give you

Collocates: on prescription

*the doctor gave me a prescription for my flu | I need to collect my prescription this afternoon*

Verb: *prescribe*

- *ordonnance*

**pretty** /'prɪti/ Adjective

a woman or girl who is *pretty* has an attractive face

*her sister was very pretty when she was younger | she had fair hair and a pretty face*

- *joli*

**pull a face** /,pʊl ə 'feɪs/ Phrase

if you *pull a face*, you change the expression on your face to show that you feel disgust or dislike or disappointment

*he pulled a face at her when she asked him to do the washing up | she bit into the lemon and pulled a face*

- *faire la tête*

**raise** /reɪz/ Verb

if you *raise* something, you lift it up to a higher place

*raise your arm above your head | she raised her hand to get my attention*

- *lever*

**ring** /rɪŋ/ Verb

if something *rings*, it makes the sound that a bell makes  
*I set the alarm to ring at 6 | the bell rang for the end of the lesson*

Noun: *ring*

*there was a ring at the door (someone had rung the doorbell)*

- *sonner*

**settle** /'set(ə)l/ Verb

if something *settles* your stomach, it stops your stomach feeling uncomfortable

*I need something to settle my stomach | after I'd had the tea, my stomach settled*

- *calmer*

**smile** /smaɪl/ Noun

a *smile* is an expression on your face where the ends of your mouth go up slightly to show that you are pleased or happy about something

*she greeted us at the door us with a smile | a faint smile crossed her face*

Verb: *smile*

Collocates: smile at someone

- *sourire*

**tiredness** /'taɪə(r)dʌs/ Noun uncount

*tiredness* is the state of feeling tired

*these pills may cause tiredness | side effects include tiredness and headaches*

Adjective: *tired*

- *fatigue*

**wipe** /waɪp/ Verb

if you *wipe* something, you move something across its surface in order to clean it. If you *wipe* your feet, you move your shoes over a surface in order to clean them

*wipe your feet before you come in | he wiped the sweat from his forehead with a handkerchief*

Noun: *wipe*

*give the table a wipe*

- *essuyer*

# 10 PLACES TO STAY

## STUDENT'S BOOK PAGES 86–87

**entertainment** /ˌentə(r)'teɪnmənt/ Noun uncount  
entertainment is things that give people pleasure, like films, concerts, television, etc.

*there was plenty of entertainment in the evenings | a series of concerts and other entertainment was organised*

Verb: *entertain* | Noun: *entertainer*

- divertissement

**facility** /fə'sɪləti/ Noun  
the facilities in a place are all the buildings, services, and equipment that are available for people to use  
*there weren't many facilities but we still had a good time | a hotel with a large leisure facility attached to it*

- installation

**location** /ləʊ'keɪʃ(ə)n/ Noun  
a location is the place where something is  
*our hotel was in a convenient location near the city centre | we don't know the exact location of the ship*  
Adjective: *located*

- emplacement

## STUDENT'S BOOK PAGES 88–89

**access** /'æksɪs/ Noun uncount  
access to somewhere or something is the fact of being able to go there or use it

Collocates: access to something

*they charged a lot for internet access in the hotel room | access to the car park is via a staircase*

Verb: *access* | Adjective: *accessible*

- accès

**availability** /ə'veɪlə'bɪləti/ Noun uncount  
the availability of something is the fact that people can use it at a particular time  
*please contact us to check availability | there is limited parking availability at the station*

Adjective: *available*

Collocates: make something available

- disponibilité

**campsite** /'kæmpsaɪt/ Noun  
a campsite is a place where people are allowed to camp in a tent  
*we found a wonderful campsite by the edge of the lake | the campsite opens at the end of March*

- camping

**electricity** /ɪˌlek'trɪsəti/ Noun uncount  
electricity is a kind of energy that can travel down wires, and that is used to heat houses, provide light, etc

Collocates: conduct electricity | generate electricity  
*the campsite cost £25 a night with free electricity | gold conducts electricity very well (lets electricity pass along it easily)*

Adjective: *electrical* | Adjective: *electric*

Collocates: an electrical appliance

- électricité

**expiry** /ɪk'spaɪəri/ Noun uncount  
an expiry date is the date after which something cannot be used any more

Collocates: an expiry date

*what is the expiry date on the card? | I wanted to agree a new deal before the expiry of my present contract*

Verb: *expire*

- expiration

**fire** /'faɪə(r)/ Noun  
a fire is a pile of burning wood or coal that you use to provide heat

Collocates: an open fire | a real fire | a roaring fire

*we all sat around the camp fire and sang songs | it's nice to have an open fire on a winter evening*

- feu

**ground** /graʊnd/ Noun  
the ground is the surface of the earth, or the surface that is under your feet when you are outside

*it was difficult to put the tent up because the ground was so hard | I slipped and fell to the ground*

- terre

**heated** /'hi:tɪd/ Adjective  
something that is heated has been made warmer  
*is the swimming pool heated? | the party was held in a heated tent in the garden*

Verb: *heat*

*heat the oven as high as it will go before you put the bread in*

- chauffé

**put up** /'pʊt ʌp/ Phrasal verb  
if you put something up, you build it or do what is needed to make it stand upright

*it took nearly an hour to put up the tent | the neighbour has put up a new fence*

- dresser

**reception** /rɪ'sepʃ(ə)n/ Noun uncount

in a hotel or other large building, *reception* is the desk near the entrance where you can get information or register your arrival

*please leave the key at reception when you go out | I left a message for him at reception*

Noun: *receptionist*

• *réception*

**reduced** /rɪ'dju:st/ Adjective

if an amount is *reduced*, it has been made smaller

*it was only £50, reduced from £99 | the hotel offered us a reduced rate of £65 a night instead of £80*

Verb: *reduce* | Noun: *reduction*

Collocates: a reduction in something | a reduction of something

*the government has promised to reduce unemployment*

• *réduit*

**reject** /rɪ'dʒekt/ Verb

to *reject* something means to refuse to accept it

*did it reject my credit card again? | he rejected my offer of help*

Noun: *rejection*

*the fighting started again after the rejection of the peace plan*

• *rejeter*

**supplement** /'sʌplɪmənt/ Noun

a *supplement* is an extra amount of money you pay in order to have a better service or better equipment than you would get for the normal price

*the room is €110 a night, with a €10 supplement for the child's bed | we paid a supplement of £15 and travelled first class*

• *supplément*

**tent** /tent/ Noun

a *tent* is a sort of building made of cloth that you can fold up and take with you when you travel somewhere. You sleep in a *tent* when you go camping

*it was cold in the tent | the tent fell down during the night*

• *tente*

**whole** /həʊl/ Adjective

a *whole* thing, or the *whole* of something, is all of it

*there was one shower block which was shared by the whole campsite | they ate the whole cake | I spent the whole week ill in bed*

• *entier*

## STUDENT'S BOOK PAGES 90-91

**afraid** /ə'freɪd/ Adjective

if you are *afraid*, you are very worried that something bad is going to happen. When you are talking about an unpleasant or unwanted situation, you can say *I'm afraid* as a polite way of saying that you are sorry about it

*I'm afraid that's just not possible | I can't help you, I'm afraid | I'm afraid you'll have to come back next week*

• *effrayé*

**ambitious** /æm'bɪʃəs/ Adjective

someone who is *ambitious* wants to be very successful and works hard to make sure that they succeed

*she's very ambitious and wants to make a million pounds before she's 30 | he's very bright, but not very ambitious*

Noun: *ambition*

Collocates: realise your ambition

*my ambition is to have my own restaurant*

• *ambitieux*

### -OUS

Words ending in *-ous* are adjectives. They are often connected to nouns but the connection is not always the same.

<i>she's very ambitious</i>	<i>realise your ambition</i>
<i>a poisonous spider</i>	<i>a deadly poison</i>
<i>a religious school</i>	<i>teach religion</i>
<i>leave a generous tip</i>	<i>show generosity</i>
<i>be very adventurous</i>	<i>a big adventure</i>

**arrange** /ə'reɪndʒ/ Verb

to *arrange* things means to put them in a particular position or order

*she enjoys arranging flowers | he arranged the books on the shelves in alphabetical order*

Noun: *flower arranging*

*I started flower arranging about 12 years ago*

• *disposer*

**behalf** /bɪ'hɑ:f/ Noun

if you do something on someone's *behalf*, or on *behalf* of someone, you do it for them and instead of them

*I'm calling on behalf of Lady Zaza | I don't want you to change it on my behalf*

• *part*

**boiling** /'bɔɪlɪŋ/ Adjective

if you are *boiling* or *boiling hot*, you are very hot. If the place where you are is *boiling*, it is very hot there

*it's boiling in my room | I'm boiling – can you open the window?*

• *bouillant*

**booking** /'bʊkɪŋ/ Noun

if you make a *booking*, you arrange to have something in the future, such as a hotel room, a table in a restaurant, etc

Collocates: make a booking | cancel a booking

*can I make a booking for next Saturday, please? | the restaurant is very popular and booking is essential*

Verb: *book*

Collocates: book a table/seat/ticket

*I'd like to book a table for four*

• *réservation*

**chemist** /'kemɪst/ Noun

a *chemist* or a *chemist's* shop is a shop where you can get medicines and which also sells things like make-up, sunglasses, etc. A *chemist* is also the person who is trained to prepare and sell the medicines in a chemists' shop

*is there a chemist nearby? | she worked in a chemist's shop in Barnsley*

• *pharmacie*

**demanding** /dɪ'mɑ:ndɪŋ/ Adjective

someone who is *demanding* always wants attention from other people

*my boss is very demanding | she spent the morning dealing with a particularly demanding customer*

• *exigeant*

**doubt** /daʊt/ Verb

if you *doubt* something, you think it might not be true

Collocates: doubt that

*I doubt I can find one | I doubt that he'll get the job*

Noun: *doubt*

Collocates: (have) no doubt

*I have no doubt that the film will be a success*

• *douter*

**nut** /nʌt/ Noun

a *nut* is the hard seed of some plants that you can eat

*do these chocolates have nuts in them? | I bought a bag of nuts to eat on the journey*

• *fruit à coque*

**record** /'rekɔ:(r)d/ Noun

a *record* of something is a piece of information about it that is kept so that people can look at it later

Collocates: keep/maintain a record | official records

*are you sure you don't have a record of my booking? | we will not give your medical records to anyone except a doctor*

Verb: *record*

• *antécédents / note*

**review** /rɪ'vju:/ Noun

a *review* is a piece of writing which says how good or bad something is, such as a film, a book, a concert, or a hotel

*why don't you post a review on the web? | the film got great reviews in all the papers*

Verb: *review* | Noun: *reviewer*

• *évaluation*

**selfish** /'selfɪʃ/ Adjective

someone who is *selfish* does not care about other people and does only what they want to do

*don't be so selfish. There's plenty for everyone | I'd had enough of his selfish behaviour and told him to go away*

Adverb: *selfishly* | Noun: *selfishness*

*they're selfishly keeping all the best ones for themselves*

• *égoïste*

**send** /send/ Verb

to *send* someone somewhere means to make them go there as part of their job, and in order to do a specific task

*could you send someone to have a look at the air-conditioning? | they sent an ambulance to get him to hospital*

• *envoyer*

**sightseeing** /'saɪt,si:ɪŋ/ Noun uncount

if you go *sightseeing*, you go around somewhere looking at the interesting buildings and places that tourists like to see

Collocates: a sightseeing tour | go sightseeing

*the morning is free for sightseeing | on Saturday you can choose between going sightseeing or going shopping*

Noun: *sightseer*

• *tourisme*

**take out** /'teɪk ,aʊt/ Phrasal verb

if you *take* something *out*, you remove it from a larger group so that it is no longer there

*don't forget to take out the ones with nuts | there weren't many grapes left after we'd taken out the rotten ones*

• *enlever*

**turn** /tɜ:(r)n/ Verb

if you *turn* a machine *up* or *down*, you make it stronger, louder, hotter, or weaker, quieter, or colder. If you *turn* a machine *on* or *off*, you make it start or you make it stop

*is there any way I can turn down the heating? | turn that music down! I can't concentrate | don't forget to turn off the television before you go to bed*

• *baisser / augmenter*

**warn** /wɔː(r)n/ Verb

if you *warn* people, you tell them about something bad that might happen to them

Collocates: warn someone about something | warn someone that | warn someone not to do something

*it's good to warn other people so they're prepared for the worst | we were warned about the danger before we set off*

Noun: *warning*

• *avertir*

## STUDENT'S BOOK PAGES 92–93

**air** /eə(r)/ Noun uncount

*air* is the gas that is all around us and that we breathe. If you talk about the *fresh air*, you are talking about being outside in nature rather than in a building

*I liked being out in the fresh air | it's very hot in here – can you open the window and let some air in*

• *air*

**childhood** /ˈtʃaɪldhʊd/ Noun

your *childhood* is the period of time in your life when you are a child

Collocates: a happy/unhappy childhood | a normal childhood

*she had a happy childhood in Scotland | I remember my childhood as a time when the sun shone nearly every day*

• *enfance*

**climb** /klaɪm/ Verb

if you *climb* something, you go up it using your feet and sometimes your hands

*we found a bear climbing a tree behind the house | we climbed the stairs all the way up to the top of the cathedral*

Noun: *climb* | Noun: *climbing* | Noun: *climber*  
*it was a long, hard climb to the top of the hill*

• *escalader*

**crowded** /ˈkraʊdɪd/ Adjective

if a place is *crowded*, there are so many people there that it is difficult to move around easily

*it gets crowded here in the summer | the streets were crowded with shoppers | the bomb went off in a crowded shopping area*

Noun: *crowd*

*there was a huge crowd waiting to get into the stadium*

• *bondé*

**decade** /ˈdekeɪd/ Noun

a *decade* is a period of ten years

*it's the first time I've been back in more than two decades | the 1960s was a very exciting decade*

• *décennie*

**dull** /dʌl/ Adjective

something that is *dull* is not interesting or exciting but boring

*it sounds dull but we were never bored | the film was really dull*

Noun: *dullness*

*I soon grew bored with the dullness of the countryside*

• *ennuyeux*

**encounter** /ɪnˈkaʊntə(r)/ Noun

if you have an *encounter* with someone or something, you meet them or come very close to them when you were not expecting to

*we had a close encounter with a bear when we were in Canada | our first encounter was during a football match (the first time we met)*

Verb: *encounter*

• *rencontre*

**fence** /fens/ Noun

a *fence* is a wooden or metal barrier that separates two areas of land

*we used to sit on the fence and watch the cows in the field | my dad put up a new fence around the garden*

• *clôture*

**fond** /fɒnd/ Adjective

if you are *fond* of someone, you like them very much. If you have *fond* memories of someone or something, it always gives you pleasure when you think about them or remember them

Collocates: *fond* memories

*I have very fond memories of those holidays with my grandparents | she was very fond of all the children in her class*

Adverb: *fondly* | Noun: *fondness*

*I'll always fondly remember those weekends with my aunt in Wales*

• *tendre*

**fresh** /freʃ/ Adjective

food that is *fresh* has been prepared or taken out of the ground very recently and is not from a can or frozen

*they sell fresh fruit and vegetables there | it will stay fresh for a few days in the fridge*

Adverb: *freshly*

*a freshly prepared tomato and onion salad*

• *frais*

**heavily** /'hevɪli/ Adverb

if you do an activity *heavily*, you do it a lot, especially something that is bad for you

Collocates: smoke/drink heavily

*he smoked quite heavily when he was younger | it rained heavily all last night*

Adjective: *heavy*

*his father was a heavy drinker*

- *beaucoup*

**homemade** /,həʊm'meɪd/ Adjective

food that is *homemade* has been made in someone's house rather than in a factory or restaurant

*I used to make homemade pizzas with my grandma | a delicious homemade lunch*

- *fait maison*

**loss** /lɒs/ Noun

a *loss* is when you lose something. It could be a game that you lose, or money that a company loses. It can also be the sad feeling you have when someone you love goes away or dies

Collocates: suffer a loss

*she suffered a great loss when her grandmother died | this was the team's third loss this year*

Verb: *lose*

- *perte*

**mess around** /,mes ə'raʊnd/ Phrasal verb

if you are *messing around* or *messing about*, you are spending time enjoying yourself and relaxing but not doing anything in particular

*we used to mess around by the river all day | the boys are just messing about in the garden*

- *trainer*

**relative** /'relatɪv/ Noun

your *relatives* are the people in your family, such as your uncles, aunts, cousins, grandparents, etc.

*we went to stay with relatives in Italy | several of my male relatives have suffered from heart problems*

- *parent*

**rent** /rent/ Verb

if you *rent* a house or flat, you pay money to the owner so that you can live in it. If the owner *rents* it, or *rents* it out, he or she lets people live in it in exchange for money. If you *rent* a car, you pay money to be able to use it for a period of time

*they rented a house near the beach | he rented the house out to students | she rented a car for a week*

Noun: *rent*

*the rent is £780 a month*

- *louer*

**set** /set/ Noun

a *set* of things is a group of them that belong together

*we spent a fortnight with each set of grandparents | a spare set of keys for the house*

- *ensemble*

**sunset** /'sʌŋ,seɪ/ Noun

*sunset* is the time of day when the sun goes out of sight and the sky changes colour as it becomes dark

*we went for a walk on the beach at sunset | in the summer months we worked from sunrise to sunset*

- *coucher de soleil*

**theme park** /'θi:m ,pɑ:(r)k/ Noun

a *theme park* is a large area outside with a lot of activities for people to enjoy. You have to pay to go into a *theme park*, and the activities are usually based on the same topic

*my friend used to spend her whole holiday at a theme park | the number of theme parks in China is growing*

- *parc à thème*

**thread** /θred/ Noun

on the Internet, a *thread* is a number of messages from various people all on the same topic

*Mark started the thread about holidays | I found a link to a really interesting thread about German punk bands*

- *fil*

**STUDENT'S BOOK PAGE 94**

**concern** /kən'sɜ:(r)n/ Noun

*concern* is a feeling of worry about a situation

Collocates: a cause for concern | express concern | give rise to concern

*she expressed concern about the rising crime rate | his injury was a major cause of concern for the team*

Verb: *concern* | Adjective: *concerned*

- *souci*

**economy** /ɪ'kɒnəmi/ Noun

a country's *economy* is all the commercial and business activity that goes on. When business is successful, the *economy* is strong. When businesses are failing, the *economy* is weak

*how has the economy changed in your country? | the global economy is still very weak*

Adjective: *economic* | Noun: *economics*

- *économie*

**employment** /ɪm'plɔɪmənt/ Noun uncount

*employment* is the state of having a job. If there is not much *employment* in an area, there are not enough jobs for people

Collocates: full-time/part-time employment | permanent/temporary employment

*they want to increase tourism to replace employment lost when the factory closed | many students are in part-time employment (they have a job for part of the week)*

Verb: *employ* | Noun: *employer* | Noun: *employee* ||

Opposite – Adjective: *unemployment*

- *emploi*

**land** /lənd/ Noun

*land* is an area of ground, especially when it is used for building or farming

*they own over 1000 hectares of land in Scotland | he bought a piece of land where they built their first house*

- *terrain*

**tourism** /'tʊərɪz(ə)m/ Noun uncount

*tourism* is the activity of visiting places for pleasure, and the businesses that exist to provide services for these visitors

*tourism has increased a lot in the south of the country | we're keen to encourage tourism on the island*

Noun: *tourist*

- *tourisme*

**well-known** /,wel'nəʊn/ Adjective

someone or something that is *well-known* is known and recognised by lots of people

*he was well-known for his ability to swim long distances | the hills are well-known among walkers*

- *connu*

# 11 SCIENCE AND NATURE

## STUDENT'S BOOK PAGES 96–97

### **breeze** /bri:z/ Noun

a *breeze* is a gentle wind

*a gentle breeze was blowing through the woods | there was only a slight breeze*

Adjective: *breezy*

- *brise*

### **freezing** /'fri:ziŋ/ Adjective

if it is *freezing*, the weather is very cold or the air in a room is very cold

*it's freezing outside, so take a warm coat | the water was freezing when I jumped in*

Verb: *freeze* | Adjective: *frozen*

*I thought I was going to freeze to death!*

- *glacial*

### **storm** /stɔ:(r)m/ Noun

a *storm* is very bad weather with very strong winds and heavy rain or snow

Collocates: a storm breaks

*a big storm is about to hit the East coast of the USA | the storm broke (started) an hour before we got home*

Adjective: *stormy*

Collocates: stormy weather

- *tempête*

### **windy** /'wɪndi/ Adjective

when it is *windy*, the wind is blowing very hard

*it's been very wet and windy recently | windy conditions made the bike ride home harder than usual*

Noun: *wind*

*the wind is blowing from the east*

- *venteux*

## STUDENT'S BOOK PAGES 98–99

### **ban** /bæn/ Verb

if someone in authority *bans* something, they make a law to say that it is not allowed. If they *ban* someone from doing something, they do not allow them to do it

Collocates: ban someone from doing something

*they're going to completely ban smoking next year | cigarette advertising was banned years ago*

Noun: *ban* | Adjective: *banned*

Collocates: a ban on something

*the government has introduced a ban on smoking*

- *interdire*

### **conduct** /kən'dʌkt/ Verb

if you *conduct* an activity, you arrange it and carry out all the work that needs to be done

Collocates: conduct an experiment/investigation | conduct research

*they wanted to conduct an experiment on animals | the local police conducted an investigation into the murder | the interview was conducted by phone*

- *mener*

### **environment** /ɪn'vaɪrənmənt/ Noun

the *environment* is the land, air, and natural water around us

Collocates: the natural environment | harm/damage the environment | protect the environment

*we need to do more to protect the environment | trees are an essential part of our natural environment*

Adjective: *environmental* | Adverb: *environmentally* |

Noun: *environmentalist*

Collocates: environmental damage/pollution

- *environnement*

### **extinct** /ɪk'stɪŋkt/ Adjective

if a type of animal or plant is *extinct*, it no longer exists anywhere in the world

Collocates: become extinct

*if we don't do more to protect bees, they could become extinct | it's been extinct since 1908*

Noun: *extinction*

Collocates: face extinction

*these bears are facing extinction (are at risk of becoming extinct)*

- *disparu*

### **forecast** /'fɔ:(r)kɑ:st/ Noun

a *forecast* is a statement of what is expected to happen in the future based on the facts that are available now

Collocates: a weather forecast

*what's the weather forecast for the weekend? | the economic forecast was very depressing*

Verb: *forecast* | Noun: *forecaster*

Collocates: a weather forecaster

*he correctly forecast the result of the election*

- *prévision*

**fund** /fʌnd/ Verb

if someone *funds* something, they provide the money that is needed to pay for it

*the government should fund more research | the project was funded by a major oil company*

Noun: *funding*

*the funding ran out before we'd finished the research*

- financer

**hit** /hɪt/ Verb

when something dangerous or damaging *hits* a place, it arrives there and has a serious and bad effect

*a huge storm is going to hit the coast in the next two hours | the financial crisis of 2008 hit the company very hard*

- toucher

**investigate** /ɪn'vestɪgeɪt/ Verb

if someone *investigates* a situation or event, they look at all the facts that they can find about it in order to learn exactly what happened or how something works

*they're investigating the effect of colour on memory | his claim was thoroughly investigated by the police*

Noun: *investigation* | Noun: *investigator*

Collocates: an investigation into something | conduct an investigation | be under investigation

*the authorities are conducting an investigation into the plane crash*

- enquêter sur

**negative** /'negətɪv/ Adjective

something that is *negative* is bad or depressing. If a person is *negative* about something, they believe they are in a bad situation and do not think about any good possibilities

*the cold summer had a negative effect on tourism in the area | he had a very negative attitude*

Adverb: *negatively* || Opposite – Adjective: *positive*

*people reacted negatively to the news*

- négatif

**nuclear** /'nju:kliə(r)/ Adjective

*nuclear* power or *nuclear* energy is energy that is created when the central part of an atom is broken apart

*they're going to build five new nuclear power plants | nuclear energy is better for the environment than using coal or gas*

- nucléaire

**power** /'paʊə(r)/ Noun uncount

*power* is energy that is used to make machines work or to heat water, houses, etc.

*storms caused power cuts in the region (when electricity could not get to houses, factories, shops, etc.) | the power station (place where electricity is made) was closed in 2004*

- électricité

**pull down** /'pʊl ,daʊn/ Phrasal verb

to *pull down* a building means to deliberately destroy it and remove everything, for example, in order to put a new building in its place

*they're going to pull down the old cinema | the house where I grew up was pulled down last year*

- démolir

**rocket** /'rɒkɪt/ Noun

a *rocket* is a vehicle that can travel into space

*we're going to launch a rocket into space next year | the Apollo spacecraft was launched with a Saturn V rocket*

- fusée

**unknown** /ʌn'nəʊn/ Adjective

if something is *unknown*, you do not know it

*all the bees are dying for some unknown reason | the word "hockey" is of unknown origin (no one knows what language it comes from) | the true story remained unknown until last year*

- inconnu

---

**STUDENT'S BOOK PAGES 100–101**

---

**bark** /ba:(r)k/ Verb

when a dog *barks*, it makes the usual sound that dogs make

*when he saw the man, Scooby barked very loudly | the dog next door was barking all night*

Noun: *bark*

*I could hear the bark of a big dog*

- aboyer

**boost** /bu:st/ Verb

to *boost* something means to make it bigger or better

*farmers can boost milk production by being nice to their cows | this win did a lot to boost the team's confidence*

Noun: *boost*

Collocates: give something a boost

*I'll show you how to give your Facebook profile a boost*

- faire augmenter

**cage** /keɪdʒ/ Noun

a *cage* is a container with bars that people use to keep animals or birds in

*the parrots were kept in a cage | it's cruel to keep animals in cages*

Adjective: *caged*

- cage

**case** /keɪs/ Noun

a *case* is a legal situation in which the police find and present evidence and a court decides if someone has committed a crime or not

*there was enough evidence to take the case to court | an unsolved case (a crime for which the police have not found the criminal)*

- affaire

**court** /kɔː(r)t/ Noun

a *court* is the place where a judge decides if someone actually committed a crime, and tells them what their punishment is if they are guilty

Collocates: appear in court | take someone to court  
*she was a witness in court in a murder case | he is due to appear in court on June 17th*

- court

**detect** /dɪ'tekt/ Verb

if you *detect* something that is difficult to see or hear, you find it

*the rats were trained to detect mines and bombs lying in the ground | the machine can detect very small quantities of gas*

Noun: *detector*

*a metal detector (a device that makes a noise when it is close to metal)*

- détecteur

**drop** /drɒp/ Verb

if you *drop* something, you let go of it by accident and it falls to the ground

*someone had dropped a wallet | be careful you don't drop that plate! | she dropped her gloves on the floor*

- laisser tomber

**elderly** /'eldə(r)li/ Adjective

if you describe someone as *elderly*, you are saying in a polite way that they are old. *The elderly* are people who are old

*a pet rabbit saved his elderly owners | an elderly lady sat down next to me on the bus*

Noun: *the elderly*

*winter causes many problems for the elderly*

- âgé

**evidence** /'eɪd(ə)ns/ Noun uncount

*evidence* is facts that prove that something is true

Collocates: evidence of something | evidence that | evidence against someone

*the police don't have enough evidence to arrest him | there was no evidence of any criminal activity*

- preuve

**explode** /ɪk'spləʊd/ Verb

when a bomb *explodes*, it makes a loud noise and sends lots of pieces of metal into the air that can cause a lot of injury and damage

*the bomb exploded outside the main railway station | terrorists used mobile phones to explode the bomb*

Noun: *explosion*

*the explosion could be heard ten miles away*

- exploser

**hearing** /'hɪərɪŋ/ Noun uncount

someone's *hearing* is their ability to hear sounds. *Hearing* is one of the five senses; the other senses are *sight*, *smell*, *taste*, and *touch*

Collocates: a sense of hearing | a hearing aid

*I'm losing my sense of hearing | my grandfather uses a hearing aid (a small device in his ear that helps him hear better)*

- audition

**hero** /'hɪərəʊ/ Noun

a *hero* is someone who does something very brave or very useful and is admired by a lot of people. *Hero* is usually used about men, although nowadays the word is used about women too. In the past, the word *heroine* was usually used about women

*his father was a war hero (had fought bravely in a war) | she was a real-life hero (a living person, not someone in a made-up story)*

Feminine – Noun: *heroine*

- héros

**in public** /ɪn 'pʌblɪk/ Phrase

if something happens *in public*, it happens where lots of people can see and hear it, rather than in private where people are not allowed to be present

*I'd never made a speech in public before | this was the first time the painting had been shown in public*

- en public

**insist** /ɪn'sɪst/ Verb

if you *insist* on doing something, you say very strongly that you are going to do it even if other people do not want you to

Collocates: insist on doing something

*he insisted on paying for the meal | she insisted that I should see a doctor*

Noun: *insistence*

Collocates: insistence on doing something  
*at her insistence, the painter reduced his price*

- insister

**jail** /dʒeɪl/ Noun

a *jail* is a building where prisoners live until the end of their punishment

Collocates: send someone to jail | be in jail | a jail bird

*he's been in jail since January | the judge sent him to jail for five years*

Verb: *jail*

• *prison*

**kindness** /'kaɪn(d)nəs/ Noun uncount

*kindness* is generous and helpful behaviour towards someone. The expression *the milk of human kindness* comes from the play "Macbeth" by William Shakespeare, and refers to the ability of people to behave in a very generous and kind way

*I'll always remember her kindness to me after my father died | I hope I can repay your kindness one day (do something nice for you as a way of thanking you)*

Adjective: *kind*

• *bonté*

**let** /let/ Verb

to *let* someone go somewhere, do something, or have something means to allow them to go there, do it, or have it

Collocates: let someone do something

*the driver stopped to let the passengers get some fresh air | I rang the bell and waited for someone to let me in | they wouldn't let me see my grandfather when he was in hospital*

• *laisser*

**nervous** /'nɜː(r)vəs/ Adjective

if you are *nervous*, you are very worried and slightly scared that you will do something badly

Collocates: nervous about something

*I was very nervous because I'd never made a speech in public before | he was nervous about the interview*

Adverb: *nervously*

*he waited nervously for his turn to go onto the stage*

• *nerveux*

**net** /net/ Noun

a *net* is a large piece of cloth with holes in it that allow air or water to pass through. *Nets* are used to catch fish. If the holes are very big, small fish can go through and only big fish are caught

*fishermen found a shark in their net | a butterfly net*

• *filet*

**owner** /'əʊnə(r)/ Noun

the *owner* of something is the person that it belongs to  
*there are 80 million gun owners in America | I never met the original owner of the house*

Verb: *own* | Noun: *ownership*

• *propriétaire*

**pet** /pet/ Noun

a *pet* is an animal that you keep at home

*do you have any pets? | she has a pet dog called Pipi*

• *animal de compagnie*

**previously** /'pri:vɪəslɪ/ Adverb

something that happened *previously* happened at a time before something else

*the parrots had previously lived in a cage (they're not in it now) | he works for a national newspaper and, previously, he was at the BBC*

Adjective: *previous*

• *auparavant*

**react** /ri:'ækt/ Verb

if someone or something *reacts* to something, they behave in a particular way because of it

Collocates: react to someone or something

*they wanted to see how he would react to the main suspect | she reacted angrily to the news*

Noun: *reaction*

Collocates: a reaction to something | an immediate reaction

*his reaction to the news was very positive*

• *réagir*

**save** /seɪv/ Verb

if you *save* someone or something, you help them escape a very dangerous situation so that they do not suffer harm or damage

Collocates: save someone's life

*having the operation saved his life | he fell into the river but was saved by a fisherman who pulled him out | a campaign to save polar bears from extinction*

• *sauver*

**shocked** /ʃɒkt/ Adjective

if you are *shocked*, you are very surprised and upset by something

*I was really shocked when I saw a rat in the kitchen | we were all deeply shocked by his death*

Adjective: *shocking* | Verb: *shock*

*what shocked me the most was that he said he would do it again*

• *choqué*

**sight** /saɪt/ Noun uncount

someone's *sight* is their ability to see things. *Sight* is one of the five senses; the other senses are *hearing*, *smell*, *taste*, and *touch*

Collocates: a sense of sight

*he's got poor sight (he can't see very well) | I was scared that I might lose my sight*

• *vue*

**suspect** /'sʌspekt/ Noun

a *suspect* is someone the police think might have committed a crime

*they wanted to see how he would react to the main suspect | police have interviewed three suspects*

Verb: *suspect*

Collocates: suspect someone of something | suspect that

- *suspect*

**wild** /waɪld/ Adjective

a *wild* animal lives in natural conditions and is not looked after by people. *Wild* plants grow naturally and are not looked after by people

*his dog was killed by a wild animal in the forest | she picked a bunch of wild flowers*

Noun: *the wild*

- *sauvage*

**wildlife** /'waɪld,laɪf/ Noun uncount

*wildlife* is animals in general, especially animals that live in natural conditions rather than farm animals or pets. The general word for farm animals is *livestock*

*we need to do more to protect wildlife in this country | these leaves are not good food for wildlife or livestock*

- *faune*

**witness** /'wɪtnəs/ Noun

a *witness* or an *eye witness* is someone who sees a crime and can say what happened

Collocates: a witness to something | an eye witness

*police are asking witnesses to contact them | he had to give evidence in court as a witness to the murder*

Verb: *witness*

- *témoïn*

**STUDENT'S BOOK PAGES 102–103****accidentally** /,æksɪ'dent(ə)li/ Adverb

if something happens *accidentally*, it happens even though no one wanted it to. If you do something *accidentally*, you do not do it deliberately and do not want it to happen

*the cure for the disease was accidentally discovered | I accidentally knocked the glass off the table*

Adjective: *accidental* | Noun: *accident*

- *accidentellement*

**atom** /'ætəm/ Noun

an *atom* is a very small piece of stuff which is too small to see with your eyes. Things like gold have only one kind of *atom*, while water is made of two different sorts of *atom*, oxygen and hydrogen

*graphene is just one atom thick | water is H<sub>2</sub>O: two atoms of hydrogen and one of oxygen*

- *atome*

**attraction** /ə'trækʃ(ə)n/ Noun uncount

*attraction* is a force that pulls two objects towards each other

*there's an attraction between the Earth and the moon*

Verb: *attract*

*if you don't dry the table it will attract dust*

- *attraction*

**award** /ə'wɔ:(r)d/ Verb

to *award* something to someone means to give them a prize for something good that they have done

*they were awarded a Nobel Prize for the discovery | the judges awarded first prize to Ian McEwan*

Noun: *award*

Collocates: win an award

*he's won several awards for his books*

- *récompenser*

**balloon** /bə'lu:n/ Noun

a *balloon* is a ball made of thin rubber which is full of air and which is used as a toy or as a decoration

Collocates: burst a balloon | blow up a balloon

*on the day of the party, we put balloons on the front door | keep the balloons away from the fire or they'll burst*

- *ballon*

**ceiling** /'si:lɪŋ/ Noun

the *ceiling* is the top surface in a room, over your head

*how do spiders walk on ceilings? | the ceiling is very low in here*

- *plafond*

**charge** /tʃɑ:(r)dʒ/ Noun

an electric *charge* is an amount of electricity that is stored in something such as a battery

*the movement creates a small electric charge | there are two types of electric charge: positive and negative*

Verb: *charge*

- *charge*

**comfort** /'kʌmfə(r)t/ Verb

if you *comfort* someone, you do things to help them become calm and relaxed when they are upset or very sad

*the baby was comforted by her mother | her father rushed to the scene to comfort the family*

Adjective: *comforting*

*thank you for your comforting words*

- *confort*

**confidently** /'kɒnfɪd(ə)ntli/ Adverb

if you do something *confidently* you do it in a positive way, believing strongly in your ability to do it

*she walked confidently into the interview room | he spoke confidently about the future*

Adjective: *confident* | Noun: *confidence*

- *avec confiance*

**cruel** /'kru:əl/ Adjective

someone or something that is *cruel* makes people or animals suffer in an unnecessary way

*taking babies from their mothers is considered cruel | children can be extremely cruel to each other*

Adverb: *cruelly* | Noun: *cruelty*

*he was treated very cruelly by the other students*

- *cruel*

**electric** /ɪ'lektrɪk/ Adjective

*electric* things use electricity to work

*Harrison played an electric guitar on the recording | the movement creates a small electric charge*

Noun: *electricity* | Adjective: *electrical*

*we use more electricity in the winter months because of the heating*

- *électrique*

**explore** /ɪk'splɔ:(r)/ Verb

if you *explore* a place, you look or travel all around it in order to find out what it is like

*they explored the room quite confidently | I'm planning a holiday to explore North Wales next year*

- *explorer*

**factor** /'fæktə(r)/ Noun

a *factor* is one of several things that have an effect on an event or situation

*what factors are important for a good quality of life? | factors such as smoking and bad diet can lead to heart attacks*

- *facteur*

**gene** /dʒi:n/ Noun

your *genes* are the parts in the cells of your body that control what you look like and other things about your body

*they've found the gene that causes the disease | we pass on our genes to our children*

Adjective: *genetic*

- *gène*

**importance** /ɪm'pɔ:(r)t(ə)ns/ Noun uncount

the *importance* of something is how important people think it is

Collocates: *vital importance* | *recognise/realise the importance of something*

*they investigated the importance of love and contact between mothers and babies | water quality is of vital importance (very important indeed)*

Adjective: *important*

- *importance*

**layer** /'leɪə(r)/ Noun

a *layer* is a flat amount of something that covers something else, or that is between two other things

Collocates: *a layer of something*

*the roof was a single layer of steel sheets | put a layer of potatoes in the bottom of the dish, then a layer of onions*

- *couche*

**particular** /pə(r)'tɪkjʊlə(r)/ Adjective

if you say you are talking about a *particular* person or thing, you mean you are talking about one person or thing even though you have not said exactly which one

*some violent criminals share a particular gene | one particular book had a huge influence on my life*

- *particulier*

**peel** /pi:l/ Verb

if you *peel* fruit or vegetables, you cut the outside skin off. If you *peel* something away from something else, you remove one layer and leave another layer underneath it

*gently peel off the plastic cover | whose turn is it to peel the potatoes?*

Noun: *peel*

- *éplucher / peler*

**prize** /praɪz/ Noun

a *prize* is something you are given for winning a competition or for a very good achievement

Collocates: *win a prize* | *be awarded a prize*

*she won first prize in a poetry competition | I was awarded a prize of £100*

- *prix*

**rare** /reə(r)/ Adjective

if something is *rare*, it is not very common or it does not happen very often

*he suffered from a rare blood disease | the winters are cold, although snow is rare*

Adverb: *rarely*

*he used to be keen, but he rarely plays the piano now*

- *rare*

**security** /sɪ'kjʊərəti/ Noun uncount

security is a feeling of being safe

*the monkey had the security of knowing his mother was there | he wanted the comfort and security of owning his own home*

Adjective: *secure* || Opposites – Noun: *insecurity* |

Adjective: *insecure*

- *sécurité*

**-ITY**

Words ending in *-ity* are usually nouns and are connected to adjectives.

<i>the security of your own home</i>	<i>a secure childhood</i>
<i>a minority of voters</i>	<i>a minor issue</i>
<i>have a majority</i>	<i>a major problem</i>
<i>have no creativity</i>	<i>a creative job</i>
<i>have a disability</i>	<i>be disabled</i>

**sticky tape** /'stɪki ˌteɪp/ Noun uncount

sticky tape is a thin strip of plastic that has glue on one side, and that you can use to stick pieces of paper together or to fix things to a wall

*I fixed it on the wall with sticky tape | I ran out of sticky tape and had to buy some more*

- *ruban adhésif*

**tear** /teə(r)/ Verb

if you *tear* something such as paper or cloth, you pull it so that it falls into two separate pieces

*graphene is so strong that you just can't tear it | she read the letter, then tore it into pieces*

Adjective: *torn*

*she was wearing a blue T-shirt and torn jeans*

- *déchirer*

**toy** /tɔɪ/ Noun

a toy is an object that children play with

*the children's bedroom was full of soft toys (small animals made of soft material) | her father made wooden toys*

- *jouet*

**violent** /'vaɪələnt/ Adjective

something that is *violent* involves the use of physical force or weapons to hurt or kill people

Collocates: *violent crime* | *a violent attack*

*many other people have the same gene but aren't violent | I can't understand his violent behaviour*

Adverb: *violently* | Noun: *violence*

*I thought there was too much violence in the film*

- *violent*

**weight** /weɪt/ Noun

the *weight* of someone or something is how heavy they are

Collocates: *lose weight* | *put on weight*

*the attraction is strong enough to hold something*

*100 times the weight of the spider | he's been trying to lose weight*

Verb: *weigh*

- *poids*

# 12 ON THE PHONE

## STUDENT'S BOOK PAGES 104–105

### battery life /'bæt(ə)ri ˌlaɪf/ Noun uncount

*battery life* is the length of time that a battery will work before it has no electricity left in it

*battery life is important when you are choosing a new phone | demand for longer battery life is increasing*

- *durée de vie de la batterie*

### coverage /'kʌv(ə)rɪdʒ/ Noun uncount

the *coverage* of a mobile phone network is the area where you can get a signal and are able to make and receive calls

*coverage is very bad in our village | this map will show your network coverage*

- *couverture*

### operating system /'ɒpəreɪtɪŋ ˌsɪstəm/ Noun

the *operating system* on a computer, mobile phone, or tablet is the software that makes all the applications work

*mobile phones and computers both require operating systems | make sure you are using the latest version of your operating system*

- *système d'exploitation*

## STUDENT'S BOOK PAGES 106–107

### back /bæk/ Adverb

you use *back* with some verbs to say that something returns where it came from. If you *give* something *back*, you give it to the person who gave it to you. If you *send* something *back*, you send it to the person or place who sent it to you. If you *call* or *ring* someone *back*, you telephone them some time after they have telephoned you

*I'm having dinner. Can I call you back in an hour? | he was sent back to prison*

- *re-*

### busy /'bɪzi/ Adjective

if a telephone line is *busy*, someone is already speaking on it so you cannot connect to it when you ring that number. In British English, you can also say that a line is *engaged*

*I called five minutes ago, but the line was busy | I tried half an hour later, but it was still busy*

- *occupé*

### confirmation /ˌkɒnfə(r)'meɪʃ(ə)n/ Noun

*confirmation* is a statement saying that something is certain or definite

*I'm still waiting for confirmation of the price | we'll send you a written confirmation of your booking*

- *confirmation*

### cover /'kʌvə(r)/ Verb

if you *cover* for someone, you do their job for them when they are not there or when they are unable to do it themselves for a short while

Collocates: *cover for someone*

*I'm covering for Frazer while he's at the dentist | I need to go to the bank. Can you cover for me for half an hour?*

- *remplacer*

### cut off /'kʌt ɒf/ Phrasal verb

if you get *cut off* during a phone call, the connection suddenly breaks and you can no longer speak to the other person

*we got cut off before we finished the conversation | I'm just going into a tunnel so we might get cut off*

- *couper*

### hang up /'hæŋ ʌp/ Phrasal verb

if you *hang up*, you end a telephone conversation and break the connection

Collocates: *hang up on someone*

*I didn't want an argument on the phone, so I just hung up | please leave a message and then hang up*

- *raccrocher*

### hold /həʊld/ Noun uncount

if you are *on hold*, you are connected by telephone but have to wait for someone to speak to you

Collocates: *put someone on hold*

*I was put on hold for about 20 minutes | I've been on hold since before 9 o'clock!*

Verb: *hold*

Collocates: *hold the line*

- *attente*

### package /'pækɪdʒ/ Noun

a *package* is a box or large envelope that is sent through the post

*I still haven't received the package | I was expecting two packages but only one arrived*

- *colis*

**put through** /ˌpʊt 'θruː/ Phrasal verb

if someone *puts* you *through*, they connect you to the person you want to speak to on the telephone

*she put me through to the right department | hold the line a moment while I put you through*

- passer la communication

**right away** /ˌraɪt ə'weɪ/ Adverb

if you do something *right away*, you do it immediately

*I'll send him the tickets right away | he fell asleep almost right away*

- immédiatement

**signal** /'sɪgn(ə)l/ Noun

a *signal* is electrical waves that carry sound and pictures to mobile phones, computers, etc.

*I can't hear you very well, there's a really bad signal here | I can never get a signal in the back garden*

- signal

**text** /tekst/ Verb

if you *text* someone, you send a written message to their mobile phone

*I always have to text my son as he never answers the phone | text me when you get to the station | he texted me to invite me to a party*

Noun: *text*

Collocates: send (someone) a text | get a text

*I got a text from Sam this morning*

- envoyer un texto

**urgent** /'ɜː(r)dʒ(ə)nt/ Adjective

something that is *urgent* is very important and needs to be dealt with very soon

*if it's urgent, I'll get her to ring you as soon as she comes back | that afternoon, Adkin got an urgent call from the hospital*

Adverb: *urgently* | Noun: *urgency*

*we need your help urgently*

- urgent

**wake** /weɪk/ Verb

if you *wake* someone, you stop them sleeping by making a noise or touching them so that they become awake. If you *wake*, you become conscious again after being asleep

*don't wake the baby, he's only just got to sleep | I woke early that morning and went for a walk | we were woken by the sound of thunder when the storm started*

- réveiller

**STUDENT'S BOOK PAGES 108–109**

**accidentally** /ˌæksɪ'dent(ə)li/ Adverb

if you do something *accidentally*, you do not do it on purpose and do not want it to happen. If something happens *accidentally*, it happens even though no one wanted it to

*several children accidentally rang 999 | I accidentally knocked the glass off the table*

Adjective: *accidental* | Noun: *accident*

- accidentellement

**campaign** /kæm'peɪn/ Noun

a *campaign* is a set of organised activities that are intended to achieve a particular result

Collocates: a campaign against something | a campaign for something | an election campaign

*a police force has launched a campaign against misuse of the emergency phone number | the election campaign lasted over a month*

Verb: *campaign* | Noun: *campaigner*

Collocates: campaign against something | campaign for something

- campagne

**collapse** /kə'læps/ Verb

if someone *collapses*, they suddenly fall down because they are ill. If a building or something solid *collapses*, it becomes destroyed because it breaks and falls to the ground

*he collapsed after he got home | the bridge collapsed during the floods | I put up some shelves on Sunday but they collapsed on Monday!*

- s'effondrer

**creature** /'kri:tʃə(r)/ Noun

a *creature* is any kind of animal, especially one that you do not know or recognise

*birds are not the only creatures you'll see in the woods | it's amazing how many creatures live under the house*

- créature

**difficulty** /'dɪfɪk(ə)lti/ Noun

if you have a *difficulty* or *difficulties*, there is a particular thing that you cannot do easily

*at home, he collapsed with breathing difficulties (he could not breathe easily) | I've always had difficulty with English spelling*

- difficulté

**domestic** /də'mestɪk/ Adjective

*domestic* means connected to or happening within people's homes and within the family

*domestic energy bills (bills for electricity and gas used in someone's house) | domestic chores (jobs like cleaning the house and doing the washing)*

- domestique

**drill** /drɪl/ Noun

a *drill* is a tool used for making holes in wood, metal, etc.

*a doctor used a domestic drill for the operation | an electric drill*

Verb: *drill*

- *perceuse*

**emergency** /ɪ'mɜː(r)dʒ(ə)nsi/ Adjective

an *emergency* is a sudden and dangerous situation which needs very quick action to prevent injury, damage, or death. *Emergency* actions and things happen or are ready to be used when there is an emergency

*she needed an emergency operation | an emergency exit (to be used if there is a fire or other danger) | the emergency services (police, fire brigade and ambulance)*

Noun: *emergency*

Collocates: declare a (state of) emergency

*tell him to hurry, it's an emergency*

- *urgence*

**expected** /ɪk'spektɪd/ Adjective

if something is *expected*, you think it is likely to happen and are ready for it

Collocates: as expected

*as expected, she passed all her exams easily | this wasn't the expected result | what's your expected time of arrival?*

Verb: *expect* || Opposite – Adjective: *unexpected* |

Adverb: *unexpectedly*

*I didn't expect to get home till after midnight | the film had a totally unexpected ending*

- *attendu*

**fine** /faɪn/ Noun

a *fine* is an amount of money that you have to pay as a punishment for doing something wrong

Collocates: a fine for (doing) something | pay a fine

*you can get an £80 fine for using a mobile phone while driving | he was ordered to pay a fine of £250*

Verb: *fine*

Collocates: be fined for (doing) something

- *amende*

**fortunate** /'fɔː(r)tʃənət/ Adjective

something that is *fortunate* is good, and happens by luck rather than happening on purpose

*they had a fortunate escape from the fire | John was fortunate enough to get a job in his father's company*

Adverb: *fortunately* || Opposite – Adjective: *unfortunate* |

Adverb: *unfortunately*

Collocates: unfortunate for someone

*fortunately, the train arrived as soon as we got to the station*

- *heureux*

**hole** /həʊl/ Noun

a *hole* is an empty space on the surface of something that goes all the way or some of the way through

Collocates: a hole in something

*I've got a hole in my sock | he dug a hole in the garden to make a swimming pool*

- *trou*

**ice** /aɪs/ Noun uncount

*ice* is water that has become hard at a low temperature

*I had to keep ice on my hand to reduce the swelling | do you want any ice in your drink?*

- *glace*

**identify** /aɪ'dentɪfaɪ/ Verb

if you *identify* something or someone, you say exactly who they are and what they are called

*they identified what sort of spider it was | she was able to identify her attacker*

Noun: *identification*

*the animal was so far away that identification was impossible*

- *identifier*

**inconvenient** /ɪnkən'viːniənt/ Adjective

if something is *inconvenient*, it gives you a few problems, but not serious ones

*have I come at an inconvenient time? | having to remember two passwords is really inconvenient*

Noun: *inconvenience* || Opposite – Adjective: *convenient*

*the low ceilings are an inconvenience for people who are tall*

- *inopportun*

**initially** /ɪ'nɪʃ(ə)li/ Adverb

if you describe what happened *initially*, you are talking about the beginning of a situation before any developments happen

*Nicholas initially seemed fine | initially, I didn't enjoy the job*

Adjective: *initial*

- *au départ*

**irrational** /ɪ'ræʃ(ə)nəl/ Adjective

something that is *irrational* is not sensible and does not happen for any good reason

*I have an irrational fear of dogs | his behaviour last night was completely irrational*

Adverb: *irrationally* || Opposite – Adjective: *rational* |

Adverb: *rationally*

*he started behaving irrationally, which was how we knew he was ill*

- *irrationnel*

**leaflet** /'li:flət/ Noun

a *leaflet* is a piece of paper or a small book containing information about something

*the police are sending leaflets to houses in the area | a publicity leaflet (one that advertises something)*

- prospectus

**misuse** /mɪs'ju:s/ Noun

*misuse* of something is using it in a wrong or bad way

Collocates: misuse of something

*the rules are meant to prevent misuse of the company's computers | misuse of customers' personal information is a serious matter*

Verb: *misuse*

- abus

**MIS-**

*mis-* is added to a number of words to mean that someone did something wrongly or badly.

*They misuse the service.*

*I misunderstood what you said. / It was a misunderstanding.*

*I miscounted the money.*

*You misheard me.*

*We were really mistreated.*

**poisonous** /'pɔɪz(ə)nəs/ Adjective

something that is *poisonous* can make you ill or kill you if you eat it

Collocates: be poisonous to someone

*one of the world's most poisonous spiders | some types of mushroom are poisonous*

Noun: *poison* | Noun: *poisoning* | Verb: *poison*

*rat poison (something you use to kill rats when they eat it)*

- poison

**remote** /rɪ'məʊt/ Adjective

a place that is *remote* is a long way from towns and cities

*he comes from a remote town in Australia | his travels took him to the remotest regions of China*

- isolé

**species** /'spi:ʃi:z/ Noun

a *species* is a type of animal or plant. The plural is also *species*

*they identified the species of spider | a rare species of butterfly*

- espèce

**swelling** /'swelɪŋ/ Noun

if you have a *swelling*, part of your body has become bigger than normal because you are ill or because it has hit something hard

*his mother noticed a swelling on his head | the swelling started to go down (become smaller)*

Verb: *swell* | Adjective: *swollen*

Collocates: *swell up*

- enflure

**transfer** /træns'fɜ:(r)/ Verb

if you *transfer* someone or something, you move them to another place

*the boy was transferred by plane to a hospital in Melbourne | the company want to transfer me to New York (make me go and work in New York)*

Noun: *transfer*

*the company does airport transfers (takes people from the airport to their hotels)*

- transférer

**unpleasant** /ʌn'plez(ə)nt/ Adjective

someone who is *unpleasant* is not nice and not friendly. Something that is *unpleasant* is not nice and not enjoyable

Collocates: be unpleasant to someone

*he was a very unpleasant man | I had a most unpleasant experience last week*

Adverb: *unpleasantly* || Opposites – Adjective: *pleasant* |

Adverb: *pleasantly*

*the man laughed unpleasantly and shook his head*

- désagréable

**wandering** /'wɒndə(r)ɪŋ/ Adjective

if you *wander*, you walk around somewhere slowly and without going in any particular direction. *Wandering* animals do not seem to be going anywhere in particular

*the Brazilian wandering spider | a wandering albatross (a type of large sea bird)*

Verb: *wander*

*we wandered round the market until it was time for lunch*

- errant

**wise** /waɪz/ Adjective

someone who is *wise* knows and understands a lot of things and can make sensible decisions. If someone's actions or choices are *wise*, they have used their knowledge and understanding very well

*it was a wise decision to go to university | my grandad was the wisest man I ever met*

Adverb: *wisely* | Noun: *wisdom* || Opposite –

Adjective: *unwise* | Adverb: *unwisely*

*he wisely decided not to try and swim across the river*

- sage

**STUDENT'S BOOK PAGES 110–111****description** /di'skripʃ(ə)n/ Noun

a *description* of someone or something is a sentence or several sentences that say what that person or thing looks like

Collocates: give a description

*she couldn't give a description of the person who took her bag | he gave an accurate description of the driver*

Verb: *describe*

- **description**

**detail** /di'teɪl/ Noun

your *details* are exact information about you, such as your address, your bank account number, and so on

*they got my bank details from there | can I take your credit card details?*

- **détail**

**grab** /græb/ Verb

to *grab* something means to take hold of it quickly and roughly

Collocates: grab hold of something

*they grabbed my bag and ran off | Julie suddenly grabbed his arm*

Noun: *grab*

*he made a grab for my purse*

- **saisir**

**issue** /'ɪʃuː/ Noun

an *issue* is a problem that people need to deal with

Collocates: address an issue

*she said there had been some security issues | we need to address the issue of youth unemployment (do something to reduce it)*

- **question**

**own** /əʊn/ Verb

if you *own* something, it belongs to you

*Bettina doesn't own her apartment, she rents it | she owned some land in Scotland*

Noun: *owner* | Noun: *ownership*

*I never met the previous owner of our house*

- **posséder**

**password** /'pɑːswɜː(r)d/ Noun

a *password* is a secret list of letters and numbers that you have to put into a computer or phone in order to be able to start using it

*you need a mix of letters and numbers to have a secure password (one that is difficult for someone to guess) | don't use the same password for all the websites you are registered with*

- **mot de passe**

**property** /'prɒpə(r)ti/ Noun

*property* is land, houses, or flats in general. In formal English, people sometimes talk about a particular house or flat as a *property*

*we looked at several properties in North London but they were all too expensive for us | we rented a property near the beach*

- **bien**

**property** /'prɒpə(r)ti/ Noun

your *property* is all the things that belong to you

*have you ever lost an important piece of property? | police recovered a lot of stolen property*

- **bien**

**prove** /pruːv/ Verb

if you *prove* something, you show someone facts that mean that it must be true

Collocates: prove someone's guilt/innocence

*I know it was Jeff who stole my keys, but I can't prove it | if I can't prove my innocence (prove that I didn't commit a crime) I'll end up in jail*

Noun: *proof*

*he wanted proof that the money had been transferred*

- **prouver**

**reference number** /'ref(ə)rəns ˌnʌmbə(r)/ Noun

a *reference number* is a number that tells someone where a particular piece of information is

*here's a reference number so you can contact your insurance company | please make a note of the reference number*

- **numéro de référence**

**repay** /rɪ'peɪ/ Verb

if you *repay* someone, you give them back money that was theirs until they spent it, gave it to you, or lost it

*she promised the bank would repay any money I'd lost | the money was repaid in full (the whole of the total)*

Noun: *repayment*

*12 monthly repayments of £100*

- **rembourser**

**scary** /'skeəri/ Adjective

someone or something that is *scary* makes you feel scared

*it was really scary when he started shouting at me | those spiders look really scary*

Adjective: *scared* | Verb: *scare*

*the noise scared everyone in the station*

- **effrayant**

**secure** /sɪ'kjʊə(r)/ Adjective

if a computer system or website is *secure*, it is safe to use because it can only be used by people who are allowed to use it

*I bought something from a website that wasn't secure | employees' details are kept on a secure system*

Adverb: *securely* | Noun: *security*

*customers' details are securely held on our servers in Germany*

• *sécurisé*

**steal** /sti:l/ Verb

to *steal* something that does not belong to you means to take it and keep it without permission

*someone hacked into my account and stole all my money | someone stole my phone when I was in the restaurant*

Adjective: *stolen*

*police found a lot of stolen property at his flat*

• *voler*

**strap** /stræp/ Noun

a *strap* is a length of material such as cloth or leather that is used to hold something in place

Collocates: *fasten/unfasten a strap | undo a strap*

*the strap on my bag is broken | the strap hadn't been fastened properly*

Verb: *strap*

• *sangle*

**threaten** /'θret(ə)n/ Verb

if someone *threatens* you, they frighten you by telling you they will hurt you or do something bad to you

Collocates: *threaten to do something*

*he followed me home and started threatening me | the government threatened to close the university*

Noun: *threat* | Adjective: *threatening*

*they faced threats of violence*

• *menacer*

**STUDENT'S BOOK PAGES 112–113**

**backwards** /'bækwə(r)dz/ Adverb

if you move *backwards*, you go in the direction that is behind you. If you do something *backwards*, you do it in the opposite order from usual

*he can say the alphabet backwards (z, y, x, w, etc.) | he fell backwards onto the pavement*

• *en arrière*

**code** /kəʊd/ Verb

a *code* is information in a form that does not use human language. If something is *coded* in a particular way, it exists there as a code and can be read or understood only if you know how to do it

*we know memory is coded in the hippocampus | the wires are colour coded*

Noun: *code*

Collocates: *in code*

*the message was sent in code*

• *coder*

**continuously** /kən'tɪnjuəsli/ Adverb

if you do something *continuously*, you do it all the time without stopping

*he continuously practises to improve the power of his mind | planes were continuously flying over the city*

Adjective: *continuous*

*a continuous stream of visitors arrived at the museum*

• *continuellement*

**relatively** /'relətɪvli/ Adverb

you use *relatively* when you are making comparisons. For example, if something is *relatively* good, it is good when compared to similar things. If someone is *relatively* tall, they are tall compared to other people

*he has had a relatively normal life | it's relatively easy to find*

Adjective: *relative*

• *relativement*

**partly** /'pɑ:(r)tli/ Adverb

something that *partly* happens or is *partly* true happens or is true a little but not completely

*his genes are partly responsible for his good memory | the amount of tax you pay depends partly on where you live*

• *en partie*

# 13 CULTURE

## STUDENT'S BOOK PAGES 116–117

### costume /'kɒstju:m/ Noun

a *costume* is the set of clothes that an actor wears when he or she is acting on the stage or in a film  
*the actors all wore amazing costumes | she won a prize for the costumes she designed*

- costume

### depressing /dɪ'presɪŋ/ Adjective

something that is *depressing* makes you feel sad or unhappy  
 Collocates: deeply depressing  
*I found the film quite depressing | news from the farm was deeply depressing*

Adjective: *depressed* | Verb: *depress* | Noun: *depression*  
*I've been feeling quite depressed since Dad died*

- déprimant

### ending /'endɪŋ/ Noun

the *ending* of a film or story is the way it ends  
 Collocates: a happy/sad ending  
*the film had a happy ending | the ending was very dramatic*  
 Verb: *end*

- fin

### explosion /ɪk'spləʊʒ(ə)n/ Noun

an *explosion* is the loud noise that happens when a bomb goes off  
*the film began with a car chase and several explosions | people could hear the explosion ten miles away*  
 Verb: *explode* | Noun: *explosive*  
 Collocates: high explosive

- explosion

### historical /hɪ'stɔrɪk(ə)/ Adjective

*historical* plays, films, stories, etc. are about people or events in the past. *Historical* people or events existed in the past  
*there's a new historical drama on BBC tonight | the city still has several historical sites*  
 Noun: *history*  
*she's studying history at university*

- historique

### martial arts /,mɑ:(r)ʃ(ə)l 'ɑ:(r)ts/ Noun

*martial arts* are sports such as judo and karate in which competitors fight each other using their hands and feet. *Martial arts* started in Asia, especially in Japan  
*a martial arts movie | she's trained in several martial arts*

- arts martiaux

### plot /plɒt/ Noun

the *plot* of a story, film, or play is all the events that happen during it and the way they are connected to each other  
 Collocates: a complicated/simple plot | a plot develops  
*the film had a very complicated plot | can you describe the plot in two sentences?*

- intrigue

### predictable /prɪ'dɪktəb(ə)l/ Adjective

if something is *predictable*, it happens in exactly the way you think it will. If a film or story is *predictable*, it is not very interesting because you can easily guess how it will finish  
*the plot was very predictable and there were no surprises at all | his behaviour was quite predictable*

Adverb: *predictably* | Verb: *predict* || Opposite – Adjective: *unpredictable*

*his exam results were, predictably, not good*

- prévisible

### romantic /rəʊ'mæntɪk/ Adjective

something that is *romantic* involves feelings of love between two people  
*Hugh Grant is in a new romantic comedy | we had a romantic holiday in Italy*  
 Adverb: *romantically* | Noun: *romance*  
*Fiona became romantically attached to her friend Gerald*

- romantique

### set /set/ Verb

if a writer or director *sets* a film or book somewhere, that is the place where the events happen  
*the film is set in space | he set his first novel in Manchester, which is where he grew up*

- se dérouler

**special effects** /ˌspeʃ(ə)l ɪˈfekts/ Noun

in a film or TV show, the *special effects* are pictures or sounds that are specially created to make it seem as if something very exciting or impossible is happening  
*the film had some amazing special effects | the director spent over \$4 million on special effects*

- effets spéciaux

**stuff** /stʌf/ Noun uncount

in informal English, you can use *stuff* as a general word to refer to any kind of thing or collection of things without saying exactly what they are  
*the new shopping centre has a great selection of stuff | we did football and cricket and stuff like that*

- choses

**surprising** /sə(r)ˈpraɪzɪŋ/ Adjective

if something is *surprising*, you did not expect it  
*the ending was really surprising | it was rather surprising to get a letter from her after 15 years*

Adverb: *surprisingly* | Adjective: *surprised* | Verb: *surprise* | Noun: *surprise* || Opposites – Adjective: *unsurprising* | Adverb: *unsurprisingly*

Collocates: by surprise

*it's surprisingly easy to make a cake*

- surprenant

**tiring** /ˈtaɪərɪŋ/ Adjective

if something is *tiring*, it makes you feel tired  
*it was quite tiring watching a whole film in English | the journey was long and tiring*

Adjective: *tired* | Verb: *tire*

*I was still tired even though I'd slept for a couple of hours*

- fatigant

**STUDENT'S BOOK PAGES 118–119**

**aim** /eɪm/ Verb

if something is *aimed* at a particular group of people, it is meant to be noticed or bought by those people. If an activity is *aimed* at achieving something, it is done in order to succeed in achieving it

Collocates: aim to do something

*we aim to finish the project in December | a new magazine aimed at teenagers*

Noun: *aim*

Collocates: with the aim of (doing) something

*he joined the army with the aim of becoming a captain within three years*

- viser

**audience** /ˈɔːdiəns/ Noun

the *audience* is the group of people who watch or listen to a performance, programme or speech

Collocates: attract an audience

*the film is aimed at a middle-class cinema audience | I've performed in front of an audience of 5,000 people | the show attracted a huge audience*

- public

**aware** /əˈweə(r)/ Adjective

if you are *aware* of something, you know that it exists

Collocates: be aware of something | aware that | make someone aware

*I wasn't aware that she was back in London | he became aware that he was speaking too loudly*

Noun: *awareness*

Collocates: awareness of something

*she had a keen awareness of the danger (she understood the danger very well)*

- conscient

**budget** /ˈbʌdʒɪt/ Noun

someone's *budget* is the amount of money that is available for them to spend on a particular activity

*his next film had a budget of \$1 million | he made his first film on a very tight budget (with very little money)*

- budget

**direction** /dɪˈrekʃ(ə)n/ Noun

the *direction* a person or group takes is the sort of activities that they become involved in

*his life took a new direction after he moved to Berlin | after school, our lives moved in different directions*

- direction

**element** /ˈelɪmənt/ Noun

the *elements* of something are all the different things that come together to make it

Collocates: elements of something

*the final chapter added another element of surprise to the plot | the most important element of his success was luck*

- élément

**festival** /ˈfestɪv(ə)l/ Noun

a *festival* is a period of time during which a lot of events take place somewhere, such as concerts, theatre performances, films, etc.

*the movie was first shown at an international film festival | the festival is held every year in August*

- festival

**focus** /'fəʊkəs/ Noun

*focus* is close attention that you pay to something

Collocates: focus on something | focus of something

*the world's focus has moved on to climate change | the economy became the main focus of the president's attention*

Verb: *focus*

Collocates: focus on something

- *point central*

**heart disease** /'hɑ:(r)t dɪzi:z/ Noun

*heart disease* is a serious problem with someone's heart that makes them ill, and that can kill them

Collocates: die of heart disease

*he died of heart disease two years after returning to the USA | I stopped eating butter and cheese in the hope of preventing heart disease*

- *maladie cardiaque*

**illegally** /ɪ'li:g(ə)li/ Adverb

if something is *illegal*, it is against the law. If something is done *illegally*, it breaks the law

*after two weeks, most films have been illegally copied | the drugs were illegally brought into the country*

Adjective: *illegal* || Opposites – Adverb: *legally* |

Adjective: *legal*

*it's illegal to buy alcohol if you're under 18*

- *illégalement*

**invade** /ɪn'veɪd/ Verb

when an army *invades* a country, it goes in there and tries to take control of the country by fighting

*England was last invaded in 1066 | 20,000 soldiers were waiting for the order to invade*

Noun: *invasion* | Noun: *invader*

Collocates: launch an invasion

*the invasion was successful and a new government was set up*

- *envahir*

**leading** /'li:dɪŋ/ Adjective

a *leading* person or thing is one of the best or most successful of their kind

*he's a leading Nollywood director | a leading mobile phone manufacturer (company that makes mobile phones)*

- *principal*

**middle-class** /,mɪd(ə)l 'kla:s/ Adjective

the *middle class* is one of the groups which people in a society are divided into according to their jobs, education, background, etc. People from that class are *middle-class* people

*the film is aimed at a middle-class audience | a middle-class area of Leeds*

Noun: *middle class*

*my grandfather always wanted to be a member of the middle class*

- *de classe moyenne*

**prison** /'prɪz(ə)n/ Noun

a *prison* is a building where someone is sent as a punishment for breaking the law. Prisoners live there for months or years until the end of their punishment

Collocates: send someone to prison | be in prison | spend time in prison

*the king was sent to prison | he spent ten years in prison for robbing a bank*

Verb: *imprison* | Noun: *prisoner*

*he was imprisoned for his political activity*

- *prison*

**productive** /prə'dʌktɪv/ Adjective

a *productive* person or area of activity is one that produces a lot of things

*India has the most productive film industry in the world | people who work from home are just as productive as their colleagues in the office*

Adverb: *productively*

*she worked more productively in the morning, before it got too hot*

- *productif*

**promote** /prə'məʊt/ Verb

if you *promote* something, you support or encourage it, and want people to know good things about it

*the film aims to promote Benin culture | she believes in promoting peace through education*

Noun: *promotion*

Collocates: promotion of something

*our department deals with the advertising and promotion of all our services*

- *promouvoir*

**reach** /ri:tʃ/ Verb

to *reach* a place, level, or situation means to get there after a journey or after a period of development

*the industry has reached a crossroads and it's not clear what its future will be | I finally reached home after an eight hour journey | have you reached a decision yet (have you decided something)?*

- *atteindre*

**source** /sɔː(r)s/ Noun

the *source* of something is the reason for it or the place where it came from

Collocates: source of something

*their low-budget approach has been the source of several problems | the sun is our source of light and heat*

• source

**sunglasses** /'sʌŋɡlɑːsɪz/ Noun

*sunglasses* are glasses that have dark glass in them to protect your eyes from strong sunlight

*why don't you get some sunglasses for the summer? | I always keep a pair of sunglasses in the car*

• lunettes de soleil

**talent** /'tælənt/ Noun

*talent* is a great skill or ability to do something very well

*anyone with talent can make films | she had an extraordinary talent for singing*

Adjective: *talented*

• talent

**unclear** /ʌn'kliə(r)/ Adjective

if something is *unclear*, no one knows or understands it very well

*it's unclear what will happen to the factory in the future | the exact meaning of the message was unclear*

Opposite – Adjective: *clear*

*it's perfectly clear that she was telling the truth*

• pas clair

**valuable** /'væljʊəb(ə)/ Adjective

an object that is *valuable* is worth a lot of money. You can also say an experience is *valuable* if you learn something useful from it. Be careful if you see the word *invaluable*. It looks as if it should mean "not valuable", but it actually means "very valuable"

*I learnt a valuable lesson that day | it's a beautiful necklace, even though it's not very valuable*

Adjective: *invaluable*

*she gained invaluable experience during her three months at the BBC*

• de (grande) valeur

**work** /wɜː(r)k/ Noun

a *work* is a painting, book, piece of music, etc. made by an artist

Collocates: a work of art

*the British stole many valuable works of art | Shakespeare's most famous work is Hamlet*

• oeuvre

**STUDENT'S BOOK PAGES 120–121**

**abstract** /'æbstrækt/ Adjective

*abstract art* does not try to show people or things in a realistic way but uses shapes and colours in order to create particular feelings or effects

*he made strange, abstract sculptures | his work was completely abstract, but full of life and colour | the drawing was simple, almost abstract*

Noun: *abstract*

*he stopped painting abstracts and took up photography*

• abstrait

**album** /'ælbəm/ Noun

an *album* is a CD with several different songs on it, usually by the same band

Collocates: release an album | an album comes out

*they're going to release their next album (make it available for sale) in November | her latest album has just come out (has just gone on sale)*

• album

**author** /'ɔːθə(r)/ Noun

an *author* is someone who writes books as a job, or someone who has written a particular book

Collocates: author of something | a best-selling author

*my favourite author is Henning Mankell | Beevor is the author of a number of books on history*

• auteur

**band** /bænd/ Noun

a *band* is a group of musicians who play music together

Collocates: a rock/punk/brass/jazz band | a dance band | a live band

*he plays guitar in a rock band | they hired a live band for the party (the musicians were there, not a recording of them)*

• groupe

**composer** /kəm'pəʊzə(r)/ Noun

a *composer* is someone who writes music, especially classical music

*Shostakovich was the greatest Russian composer of the 20th century | my favourite composer is Beethoven*

Verb: *compose* | Noun: *composition*

• compositeur

**exhibition** /,eksɪ'bɪʃ(ə)n/ Noun

an *exhibition* is an event where people can go and look at paintings and other works of art. Some *exhibitions* last just a day and others go on for months

Collocates: an art exhibition | an exhibition of something | put on/stage/hold an exhibition

*I saw an exhibition of Henry Moore's work last year | there's an art exhibition in the school hall on Saturday*

• exposition

**fan** /fæn/ Noun

if you are a *fan* of someone or something, you like them very much

*I'm a big fan of tennis | a group of her fans were waiting outside the theatre*

- fan

**fiction** /'fɪkʃ(ə)n/ Noun uncount

*fiction* is stories about people and events that are not true, which you read for pleasure. Books about real people and events are called *non-fiction*

*I really enjoy reading crime fiction | I write fiction in my spare time*

Adjective: *fictional* || Opposite – Noun: *non-fiction*

- fiction

**figure** /'fɪgə(r)/ Noun

a *figure* is something that is in the shape of a human, especially in art

*an abstract sculpture based on human figures | the two figures in the painting represent love and loyalty*

- silhouette

**imagination** /ɪ,mædʒɪ'neɪʃ(ə)n/ Noun uncount

your *imagination* is your ability to think and make pictures in your mind about things, people, or events that you have never seen

Collocates: a vivid imagination | use your imagination | in your imagination

*in my imagination, I thought he was taller | draw a plan of your house, or use your imagination and make one up*

Verb: *imagine* | Adjective: *imaginative*

- imagination

**instrument** /'ɪnstrʊmənt/ Noun

a musical *instrument* is something such as a piano, violin, or trumpet that you use to make musical sounds

Collocates: a musical instrument

*a shop selling musical instruments | what instrument do you play?*

Adjective: *instrumental*

*the last track on the album is an instrumental piece (just music, with no singing)*

- instrument

**landscape** /'lænd(ɪ)skeɪp/ Noun

a *landscape* is a painting or photograph of the countryside

*he paints mainly landscapes and seascapes (pictures of the sea) | I think a landscape would look good on this wall*

- paysage

**novel** /'nɒv(ə)l/ Noun

a *novel* is a book that tells a story

*I prefer reading novels to poetry | she spent three years writing her first novel*

Noun: *novelist*

*he was a novelist and poet*

- roman

**painting** /'peɪntɪŋ/ Noun

a *painting* is a picture that someone has made using paint

Collocates: an oil painting | a watercolour painting

*I'm going to hang this painting in the bedroom | his works include a number of oil paintings (using paint that is made from oil)*

Verb: *paint* | Noun: *painter*

- peinture

**poetry** /'pəʊɪtri/ Noun uncount

*poetry* is writing that uses words very carefully, often in short lines and with endings to lines that sound like each other

*do you read much poetry? | modern poetry can be quite difficult to understand*

Noun: *poet* | Noun: *poem*

- poésie

**portrait** /'pɔː(r)trɪt/ Noun

a *portrait* is a painting, photograph, or drawing of someone which is meant to show what they look like

*a full-length portrait of the queen (showing the whole body, not just the face) | a portrait of his grandfather hangs in the hall*

- portrait

**rehearse** /rɪ'hɜː(r)s/ Verb

if you *rehearse*, you practise something such as a play or concert before you perform it in front of an audience

Collocates: rehearse for something

*they're rehearsing for the end-of-year concert | we've only got three days to rehearse and then we have to film the first scene*

Noun: *rehearsal*

Collocates: a dress rehearsal

*a full dress rehearsal (when the performance is done from start to finish as if for real with the actors wearing the costumes)*

- répéter

**sculpture** /ˈskʌlptʃə(r)/ Noun

a *sculpture* is an object that is a work of art made from wood, stone, plastic, etc. The art of making these works is also called *sculpture*

*she studied sculpture at art school | in the hall was a sculpture of a lion*

Noun: *sculptor*

*he painted portraits to earn money, but he really wanted to be a sculptor*

- sculpture

**suspense** /səˈspens/ Noun uncount

*suspense* is a feeling of excitement you have when you do not know what is going to happen but you think it will be surprising or exciting

Collocates: keep someone in suspense

*I'd read the book, so there was no suspense when I saw the film | Forsyth keeps you in suspense right up until the very last chapter*

- suspense

**taste** /teɪst/ Noun

your *taste* in something is how much you like it, or what sorts of things you like

Collocates: taste in something | for someone's taste | to someone's taste

*we get on really well even though we've got very different tastes | she has very good taste in music (she likes only good music)*

Adjective: *tasteful* | Adverb: *tastefully*

- gôût

# 14 STUFF

## STUDENT'S BOOK PAGE 123

**spare** /speə(r)/ Adjective

something that is *spare* is not used usually, but is available if it is needed

*you can sleep in the spare room | make sure you have a spare tyre in the boot*

• disponible

## STUDENT'S BOOK PAGES 124–125

**bin** /bɪn/ Noun

a *bin* is a container where you put things that you don't want

Collocates: a rubbish bin | a litter bin

*just throw it in the bin | use the rubbish bin by the gate*

Verb: *bin*

*if you don't want it any more, just bin it*

• poubelle

**bucket** /'bʌkɪt/ Noun

a *bucket* is a container with a handle and an open top that you use for carrying water. The amount that a *bucket* can contain is a *bucketful*

Collocates: a bucket of water

*a plastic bucket | as a joke, she threw a bucket of water over me*

Noun: *bucketful*

• seau

**dark** /dɑː(r)k/ Adjective

if somewhere is *dark*, there is no light there or only a very little light

*it's really dark in the garden now | the inside of the cinema was dark*

Noun: *dark* | Noun: *darkness*

Collocates: be in darkness

*I'm afraid of the dark*

• sombre

**deposit** /dɪ'pɒzɪt/ Noun

a *deposit* is a sum of money you pay before you rent something. If the place or thing you rented is in good condition when you finish using it, the money is given back to you

Collocates: a refundable/returnable deposit

*the deposit will be 15% of the rental price | bike hire is £10 an hour, with a £50 returnable deposit (a deposit that will be given back to you)*

• arrhes

**fix** /fɪks/ Verb

if you *fix* something somewhere, you put it there in such a way that it will stay there, for example by using nails or screws

*the shelves were fixed to the wall with metal brackets | I've been trying to fix a new handle on the door*

• fixer

**hammer** /'hæmə(r)/ Noun

a *hammer* is a tool that consists of a handle and a heavy metal end which you use to knock nails into wood

*I dropped a hammer on my foot | you'll need a hammer and some nails*

Verb: *hammer*

• marteau

**handle** /'hænd(ə)l/ Noun

a *handle* is a part of something that you hold on to when you are using it

*the handle of the frying pan was too hot to hold | the door handle was stuck*

• poignée

**join** /dʒɔɪn/ Verb

if you *join* things together, you attach them to each other and fix them so that they stay together

*I need to join these bits of paper together | join the two pieces of plastic with glue*

• attacher

**mortgage** /'mɔː(r)ɡɪdʒ/ Noun

if you have a *mortgage*, you have borrowed an amount of money to pay for a house or flat and you are paying the money back over a long period of time

Collocates: pay off a mortgage | take out a mortgage

*we had to take out a mortgage to buy the house | he won a lot of money and paid off his mortgage*

• crédit immobilier

**nail** /neɪl/ Noun

a *nail* is a thin pointed piece of metal that you push into wood by hitting it with a hammer in order to fix something in place or hold things together

*hammer the nail into the wall here | I dropped a bag of nails on the floor*

Verb: *nail*

• clou

**needle** /'ni:d(ə)/ Noun

a *needle* is a thin, pointed piece of metal with a small hole at one end for thread to go through. You use *needles* for sewing things

*My buttons come off. Can I borrow a needle and some thread (long thin piece of cotton, wool, etc. for sewing)? | a sewing needle | I couldn't see well enough to thread the needle (push the thread through the small hole)*

• *aiguille*

**oven** /'ʌv(ə)n/ Noun

an *oven* is a piece of equipment in your kitchen that can get very hot, and which you use to cook food in

Collocates: a gas/electric oven | turn an oven on/off | a hot/low oven

*bake it in a hot oven for 40 minutes | did you remember to turn the oven off?*

• *four*

**pan** /pæn/ Noun

a *pan* is a metal container that you use for cooking food  
*heat the milk in a small pan | a frying pan*

• *casserole*

**plaster** /'plɑ:stə(r)/ Noun

a *plaster* is a small piece of sticky material that you put over a cut on your skin in order to protect it

*put a plaster on the cut | you can take the plaster off now*

• *pansement*

**shelf** /ʃelf/ Noun

a *shelf* is a flat surface attached to a wall, which you can put things on

Collocates: the top shelf | the bottom shelf

*there's some toothpaste on the shelf in the bathroom | I spent the afternoon putting up shelves in the kitchen (fixing them to the wall)*

Noun: *shelving*

• *étagère*

**sort out** /ˌsɔ:(r)t 'aʊt/ Phrasal verb

if you *sort a place out*, you organise the things there so that everything is in order

*we'll have to give everything a good clean and sort the place out | you're not getting any more pocket money till you've sorted out your bedroom*

• *ranger*

**spill** /spɪl/ Verb

if you *spill* a liquid, you accidentally let it fall out of its container

*I've spilled milk all over the chair | she spilled some hot tea on her hand | don't spill your coffee*

• *renverser*

**stapler** /'stæplə(r)/ Noun

a *stapler* is a small machine which pushes thin pieces of stiff metal through sheets of paper in order to hold them together

*can I borrow a stapler? | I've got two staplers and I can never find either of them*

Noun: *staple* | Verb: *staple*

• *agrafeuse*

**store** /stɔ:(r)/ Verb

if you *store* something somewhere, you keep it there until you need it

*we store our camping gear in the spare room | my parents stored our furniture for us when we were waiting to move into our new flat*

Noun: *storage* | Noun: *store*

Collocates: in store

*our furniture was in store for three weeks*

• *ranger*

## STUDENT'S BOOK PAGES 126–127

**bar** /bɑ:(r)/ Noun

a *bar* is a solid piece of something that is longer than it is wide

Collocates: a bar of something

*a bar of chocolate | a bar of soap*

• *barre*

**burn** /bɜ:(r)n/ Verb

if you *burn* something, you destroy it by making it catch fire

*they recycle 50% of their waste, and burn the rest | lots of houses burned down in the Great Fire of London*

• *brûler*

**can** /kæn/ Noun

a *can* is a metal container, especially for drinks or food. A *can* is also the amount of drink or food inside it

Collocates: a can of something

*she drank two cans of lemonade | can you buy a can of beans for lunch?*

Adjective: *canned*

• *boite de conserve / canette*

**carton** /'kɑ:(r)t(ə)n/ Noun

a *carton* is a container for liquid, especially food liquids such as milk. A *carton* is also the amount of liquid inside it

Collocates: a carton of something

*a carton of orange juice | an empty milk carton*

• *brique*

**consume** /kən'sju:m/ Verb

if you *consume* food, you eat it or drink it. If you *consume* other things, you use them and then have to throw them away. Economists refer to people who buy and use things as *consumers*

*everything we produce and consume leads to waste | he consumed a huge plate of pasta*

Noun: *consumer* | Noun: *consumption*

*energy consumption has been reduced this year*

- *consommer*

**convince** /kən'vɪns/ Verb

if you *convince* someone, you succeed in making them believe something that they did not believe to start with  
Collocates: convince someone of something | convince someone that

*the professor is trying to convince me that I could waste less | the article wouldn't convince all its readers, but it was well written*

Adjective: *convincing* | Adjective: *convinced*

*it was a very convincing article*

- *convaincre*

**dispose of** /dɪ'spəʊz ɒv/ Phrasal verb

if you *dispose of* something, you succeed in throwing it away because you no longer need it or use it

*what's the best way to dispose of old batteries? | the company is disposing of all its old computer screens*

Noun: *disposal* | Adjective: *disposable*

Collocates: disposal of something

*once a year they organise the disposal of broken furniture*

- *se débarrasser de*

**efficiency** /ɪ'fɪj(ə)nsi/ Noun

the *efficiency* of a machine is how well it works, and how little energy it wastes. A person's *efficiency* is their ability to do something well without wasting any time or effort

*100% efficiency is impossible | we need to improve our efficiency in this office*

Adjective: *efficient* | Adverb: *efficiently* || Opposites –

Noun: *inefficiency* | Adjective: *inefficient* |

Adverb: *inefficiently*

- *efficacité*

**estimate** /'estɪmeɪt/ Verb

if you *estimate* something, you guess how much it is using the information you have available, although you know you cannot say what the exact amount is

*let's try and estimate the cost of the holiday | I estimated that there were over 200 people there*

Noun: *estimate* | Adjective: *estimated*

Collocates: a rough estimate

*at a rough estimate it will cost between two and three thousand pounds*

- *estimer*

**gas** /gæs/ Noun

*gas* is any substance such as air which is not solid and not liquid. Some kinds of gas are used in homes and factories for energy or cooking

*cows and sheep produce a lot of gas which causes global warming | natural gas is lighter than air*

- *gaz*

**get rid of** /get 'rɪd ɒv/ Phrase

if you *get rid of* something, you throw it away or destroy it because you no longer need it or use it

*I need to get rid of some of my old clothes | I can't get rid of the smell of fish in the kitchen*

- *se débarrasser de*

**guilty** /'gɪlti/ Adjective

if you feel *guilty* about something, you feel bad because you think you have done something wrong or unhelpful. In a court, if a judge or jury says someone is *guilty*, they are saying that person committed a crime

Collocates: guilty about (doing) something | guilty of something

*I feel really guilty about leaving you to finish the work | he gave me a guilty look when I asked him where the money was*

Noun: *guilt*

*his feelings of guilt kept him awake that night*

- *coupable*

**jar** /dʒɑ:(r)/ Noun

a *jar* is a glass container for food such as jam or honey

Collocates: a jar of something

*a jar of honey | you can recycle your old bottles and jars*

- *pot*

**lead to** /'li:d tʊ/ Phrasal verb

if one thing *leads to* another, it is the reason for the other thing happening

Collocates: lead to someone doing something

*can watching too much television lead to bad behaviour in children? | his exam results led to him getting a place at Oxford University*

- mener à

**mine** /maɪn/ Verb

to *mine* coal, gold, salt, etc. means to dig it out of the ground

*China mines over 47% of the world's coal | diamonds have been mined here for over 40 years*

Noun: *mine* | Noun: *mining* | Noun: *miner*

Collocates: a coal/gold/salt, etc. mine

*her father worked in the coal mine*

- exploiter une mine

**pick up** /ˌpɪk 'ʌp/ Phrasal verb

if you *pick something up*, you lift it up from the place where it is with your hands

*he picked up a carton from my shopping basket | I bent down to pick the money up from the floor*

- ramasser

**pot** /pɒt/ Noun

a *pot* is a container that is used for cooking, keeping food in, or growing plants in

Collocates: a pot of something

*a pot of yoghurt | we keep the pots and pans in a cupboard next to the cooker*

- pot

**preserve** /prɪ'zɜ:(r)v/ Verb

if you *preserve* something, you keep it fresh and in good condition, or you stop it from going bad or being destroyed

*they use chemicals to preserve the food | experts are working to preserve the painting*

Noun: *preservation*

Collocates: the preservation of something

*the preservation of the old bus station will be very expensive*

- conserver

**record** /'rekɔ:(r)d/ Noun

your *record* in a particular activity is how well or badly you have done in it

Collocates: a record in doing something | a record on something

*Estonia has the best record on rubbish in the EU | she has a good record in finishing projects on time*

- réputation

**recycle** /ri:'saɪk(ə)/ Verb

if you *recycle* things that you no longer need or use, you send them away so that they can be treated in special factories and used again somehow

*you can recycle those plastic bottles | we've been recycling our old newspapers for years*

Noun: *recycling*

*we should do more to encourage recycling*

- recycler

**sack** /sæk/ Noun

a *sack* is a large bag made of a rough material used for keeping things in or carrying things

Collocates: a sack of something

*a sack of potatoes | three sacks of coal*

- sac

**site** /saɪt/ Noun

a *site* is a place where something is or where something happens. On the internet, a *site* (also a website) is a particular set of connected pages

Collocates: a building site

*they looked at sites where rubbish had been burned | it's on the site of a much older church*

- site

**slightly** /'slaitli/ Adverb

*slightly* means a little but not very much

*I felt slightly sick | the cost of rail travel has gone up slightly this year*

Adjective: *slight*

- légèrement

**sticker** /'stɪkə(r)/ Noun

a *sticker* is a piece of paper, usually with writing or a picture on it, that you can attach to something

*you have to put a sticker on the bag to show that you have paid | a sticker on the sofa said it was reduced to £750*

- autocollant

**throw away** /ˌθrəʊ ə'weɪ/ Phrasal verb

if you *throw something away*, you put it somewhere where it will be taken away because you do not want it or need it any more

*in Switzerland, people have to pay to throw things away | I threw away two pairs of shoes because they didn't fit me any more*

- jeter

**tin** /tɪn/ Noun

a *tin* is a metal container, especially for drinks or food. A *tin* is also the amount of drink or food inside it

Collocates: a tin of something

*a tin of tomatoes | she drank two tins of cola*

Adjective: *tinned*

- *boite de conserve / canette*

**ton** /tʌn/ Noun

In Britain, a *ton* is a unit of weight that is equal to 1,016 kilos. In the USA, a *ton* is a unit of weight equal to 907 kilos. In Europe and other parts of the world, 1,000 kilos is a *tonne*, which is also called a *metric ton*

*the car weighed just over a ton | about 30,000 tons of steel were used in the building*

- *tonne*

**tray** /treɪ/ Noun

a *tray* is a flat piece of plastic, wood, or metal which you use to carry things on, such as glasses of drink or plates of food

Collocates: a tray of drinks/coffee/tea

*a tray of sandwiches | she brought out the drinks on a tray*

- *plateau*

**waste** /weɪst/ Noun uncount

*waste* is things that are no longer needed and that people want to get rid of

*they recycle 50% of their waste, and burn the rest | household waste is collected once a week*

- *déchets*

**STUDENT'S BOOK PAGES 128–129****blow** /bləʊ/ Verb

if something *blows* somewhere, it moves there because of the wind

Collocates: blow away | blow open | blow shut | blow down | blow in

*I use it to stop papers on my desk blowing away | the door blew shut*

- *s'envoler / souffler*

**break up** /'breɪk ʌp/ Phrasal verb

if two people *break up*, they decide to stop having a romantic relationship with each other

*a couple of weeks after that, we broke up | I broke up with Jennifer last week*

Noun: *breakup*

*she's still recovering from her recent breakup*

- *se séparer*

**click** /kɪk/ Verb

if you *click* on something on a computer screen, you press a button on the mouse to make the computer do something, for example to open a new document or page on a website

Collocates: right-click | left-click | double-click

*click on the link to see a video of the event | double-click the file name to open the document (click twice)*

Noun: *click*

*it takes about six clicks to get to the right page on the website*

- *cliquer*

**clue** /kluː/ Noun

a *clue* is a small piece of information that helps you discover the truth about something

Collocates: give someone a clue | look/search for clues | find a clue

*she gave me some clues about what my present was going to be | the police are searching the car for clues*

- *indice*

**embarrassing** /ɪm'bærəsɪŋ/ Adjective

if something is *embarrassing*, it makes you feel a little ashamed and worried about what people will think of you

*it was a bit embarrassing, because I couldn't remember his name | can you stop asking embarrassing questions?*

Adverb: *embarrassingly* | Adjective: *embarrassed* |

Verb: *embarrass* | Noun: *embarrassment*

Collocates: embarrassed by/about something

*his exam results were embarrassingly bad*

- *gênant*

**exhausted** /ɪg'zɔːstɪd/ Adjective

if you are *exhausted*, you are very tired

*sit down – you must be exhausted | I got home exhausted after walking from the station*

Adjective: *exhausting* | Noun: *exhaustion*

*I just want to sleep. It's been an exhausting day*

- *épuisé*

**hand** /hænd/ Verb

if you *hand* something to someone, you give it to them by putting it in their hand

Collocates: hand someone something | hand something to someone

*she handed me a rock from the beach | he handed the letter to me*

- *tendre*

**link** /lɪŋk/ Noun

a *link* is a place on a computer screen that connects to a different page or different information if you click on it

Collocates: click on a link | a link to something

*click on the link to see a video of the event | I found it from the link on the BBC website*

- *lien*
- 

**rock** /rɒk/ Noun

a *rock* is a large, heavy stone

*we climbed over the rocks to get to the sea | a huge piece of rock*

- *rocher*
- 

**shame** /ʃeɪm/ Noun

if you say that something is a *shame*, you mean it is unfortunate or disappointing

Collocates: a shame that | a shame to do something

*can't you come to the party? Oh, what a shame | it's a real shame that they closed the factory*

- *honte*
- 

---

**STUDENT'S BOOK PAGE 130**

---

**base** /beɪs/ Verb

if a writer *bases* a story on certain things, he or she uses those things as the main part of the story

Collocates: base something on something or someone

*Dodgson based the stories on places that they knew about | Liddell's daughter was the girl that Alice was based on | he based his first novel on his own experience of growing up in Blackburn*

- *baser*
- 

**hometown** /'həʊmtaʊn/ Noun

your *hometown* is the place where you live or the place where you grew up

*she's my best friend from my hometown | she had to leave her hometown and move to New York*

- *ville natale*
- 

**influence** /'ɪnfluəns/ Verb

if you *influence* someone, you have an effect on the way they behave or develop

*the city has also influenced a number of other writers | Foster was heavily influenced by classical music*

Noun: *influence* | Adjective: *influential*

Collocates: have influence on/over someone or something

*he has a lot of influence in the school*

- *influencer*
-

# 15 MONEY

## STUDENT'S BOOK PAGES 134–135

### according to /ə'kɔː(r)dɪŋ ,tuː/ Preposition

when you want to say who told you something or where you read something, you can say *according to* someone  
*according to the government, inflation fell last month | it will be really hot tomorrow, according to the weather forecast*

- selon

### average /'æv(ə)rɪdʒ/ Adjective

the *average* of a set of quantities is the result of adding up all the quantities and dividing that number by the number of quantities there are. For example, the *average* of 2, 7 and 9 is 6, because 2+7+9 makes 18, and 18 divided by 3 is 6  
*the average salary is about \$35,000 a year | average house prices rose again last year*

- moyen

### cost of living /,kɒst əv 'lɪvɪŋ/ Noun singular

the *cost of living* in a place is the amount of money people need in order to be able to pay for everything they need, such as food, clothes, rent, etc.

*the cost of living has gone up a lot in the last five years | the cost of living in London is higher than in Manchester*

- coût de la vie

### currency /'kʌrənsi/ Noun

a country's *currency* is the money that is used there. For example, the currency of the USA is the dollar

Collocates: a strong/weak currency | foreign currency

*it's cheaper to travel abroad when our currency is very strong | the single European currency, the Euro*

- devise

### currently /'kʌrəntli/ Adverb

things that are happening *currently* are happening now  
*inflation is currently quite low | where is he currently working?*

Adjective: *current*

- actuellement

### designer /dɪ'zaɪnə(r)/ Adjective

*designer* goods are made by famous designers and are very expensive and fashionable

*she wore a designer dress to the party | he got a designer watch for his birthday*

- de couturier

### election /ɪ'lekʃ(ə)n/ Noun

an *election* is an event when people choose their members of parliament by selecting the person they want from a list of candidates

Collocates: a general election

*there'll be an election in May | who did you vote for in the election?*

Verb: *elect*

- élection

### electronic /,elek'trɒnɪk/ Adjective

*electronic* machines such as computers or televisions use electricity that has passed through silicon chips or transistors

*electronic goods are cheaper there | all our electronic equipment was damaged in the flood*

- électronique

### goods /gʊdz/ Noun plural

*goods* are things that are made to be sold in shops

*it's cheaper to buy electronic goods online | the goods are transported by road*

- marchandises

### inflation /ɪn'fleɪʃ(ə)n/ Noun uncount

when there is *inflation*, the price of things that you buy increases regularly

*inflation hasn't been this low for 20 years | inflation rose to over 20% in the 1970s*

- inflation

### pace /peɪs/ Noun

the *pace* of something is how fast or slowly it moves or changes

Collocates: the pace of life

*the pace of life in New York is very fast | the pace of change in the computer industry has been extreme*

- allure

### popularity /,pɒpjʊ'lærəti/ Noun uncount

someone's *popularity* is the fact of being liked by a lot of people

*the government has been losing popularity | the Harry Potter books enjoy huge popularity*

Adjective: *popular* || Opposites – Adjective: *unpopular* | Noun: *unpopularity*

- popularité

**unemployment** /ˌʌnɪmˈplɔɪmənt/ Noun uncount  
when there is *unemployment* somewhere, a lot of people there do not have a job  
Collocates: high unemployment | rising unemployment  
*there's a lot of unemployment in the area | the early 1980s was a time of high unemployment*  
Adjective: *unemployed* | Noun: *the unemployed*

• *chômage*

**weak** /wi:k/ Adjective  
something that is *weak* is not very strong  
*I can't use my phone because the signal is too weak | I was too weak to get out of bed*  
Noun: *weakness* | Adverb: *weakly*  
*the weakness of the pound against the Euro made our holiday in Rome very expensive*

• *faible*

**STUDENT'S BOOK PAGES 136–137**

**assume** /ə'sju:m/ Verb  
if you *assume* that something is true, you believe it is true even though you cannot know for certain  
Collocates: assume that  
*we always assumed he wasn't very successful | we shouldn't assume it will be sunny tomorrow | she didn't answer the door, so I assumed she was out*

Noun: *assumption*

Collocates: make an assumption

*people make assumptions about him because of the way he looks*

• *suppose*

**attention** /ə'tenʃ(ə)n/ Noun uncount  
*attention* is the thought or interest you give to something you are watching or listening to  
Collocates: pay attention (to something) | give your attention to something | undivided attention  
*you need to pay attention in class | I could tell that he wasn't giving me his full attention*

• *attention*

**doll** /dɒl/ Noun  
a *doll* is a toy that looks like a baby or a small person  
*a wooden doll (one made of wood) | by the age of nine she thought she was too old to be playing with dolls*

• *poupée*

**earn** /ɜ:(r)n/ Verb  
money you *earn* is the money you are paid for doing your job  
Collocates: earn money | earn a living  
*he delivers newspapers before school in the morning to earn some money | we all need to earn a living (have a job that pays us enough to live)*  
Noun: *earnings*  
*average earnings rose again last year*

• *gagner*

**fall** /fɔ:l/ Verb  
if something *falls*, it becomes lower in amount, level, price, etc.  
*his weight fell to just 50 kilos | unemployment has been falling for the last six months*

• *chuter*

**grow up** /ˌgrəʊ 'ʌp/ Phrasal verb  
*to grow up* means to go through the process of being a child and then becoming an adult  
*what do you think they enjoyed when they were growing up? | what do you want to be (what job do you want) when you grow up?*

• *grandir*

**interest** /'ɪntrəst/ Noun uncount  
when you pay back money that you borrowed from a bank, the *interest* is the extra money that you pay them on top of the actual amount you borrowed. *Interest* is also money you receive when you keep money in a bank  
*I have to pay interest on the loan | they charged him 15% interest*

• *intérêt*

**invest** /ɪn'vest/ Verb  
if you *invest* in something, or *invest* money in it, you spend some money in a way that you hope will increase the total amount of money that you have, for example by buying shares in a company that will increase in value  
Collocates: invest in something  
*he had invested his money very wisely | should I invest in property?*

Noun: *investment* | Noun: *investor*

Collocates: a good investment

*buying a house is a good investment*

• *investir*

**minimum** /ˈmɪnɪməm/ Adjective

the *minimum* amount of something is the smallest amount that is allowed or possible

*£700 is the minimum amount I'll accept for the car | the minimum temperature last night was three degrees below freezing*

Noun: *minimum* || Opposite – Adjective: *maximum* |  
Noun: *maximum*

Collocates: a minimum of something | a maximum of something

*I need a minimum of 20 minutes to get ready*

- *minimum*

**owe** /əʊ/ Verb

if you *owe* someone money, you have to give it to them because you borrowed it from them or because you have to pay them for something they have done for you or sold to you

Collocates: owe someone something | owe money to someone

*I owe you three Euros from yesterday | do you owe any money to anyone?*

- *devoir*

**population** /ˌpɒpjʊˈleɪʃ(ə)n/ Noun

the *population* of a place is all the people who live there  
*three-quarters of the population own a car | the population of Australia is just over 23 million*

- *population*

**possession** /pəˈzesh(ə)n/ Noun

your *possessions* are all the things that you own

*your will says what must happen to your possessions after you die | until she was eight, the doll was her most precious possession*

- *affaires*

**saying** /ˈseɪɪŋ/ Noun

a *saying* is a well-known expression that people often use  
*as the saying goes: "many hands make light work" | I tried to learn as many French sayings as I could*

- *expression*

**turn into** /ˌtɜː(r)n ˈɪntuː/ Phrasal verb

if you *turn* something *into* something else, you change it so that it stops being the old thing and becomes the new thing. If one thing *turns into* another thing, it changes completely and stops being what it was and becomes the other thing

*Dad used to find bits of wood and turn them into toy boats and dolls | it used to be a garage, but we've turned it into an office*

- *transformer*

**valuable** /ˈvæljuəb(ə)l/ Adjective

an object that is *valuable* is worth a lot of money. You can also say an experience is *valuable* if you learn something useful from it. Be careful if you see the word *invaluable*. It looks as if it should mean "not valuable", but it actually means "very valuable"

*what are the most valuable things you own? | it's a beautiful necklace, even though it's not very valuable*

Adjective: *invaluable*

*his advice proved invaluable*

- *précieux*

**wage** /weɪdʒ/ Noun

your *wage* is the amount of money you are paid for your job, especially if you are paid every week. If you are paid every month, you usually talk about your salary

Collocates: an hourly/daily/weekly wage

*the minimum wage then was £5.73 an hour | they've always paid low wages at that factory*

- *salaire*

**worth** /wɜː(r)θ/ Adjective

the amount of money that something is *worth* is its value  
*it's a nice painting, but it isn't worth much | my watch is worth over £300*

- *valoir*

**STUDENT'S BOOK PAGES 138–139****account** /əˈkaʊnt/ Noun

if you have a bank *account*, you have an arrangement with a bank so that they take care of your money and let you write cheques, take your money from cash machines, etc.

*my salary goes into my current account (the account I use for paying bills and regular things) on the first of the month | I want to open an account*

- *compte*

**activity** /ækˈtɪvəti/ Noun

*activity* is something that happens or that someone does for a particular purpose

*your card was cancelled because of some irregular activity | there's been a lot of activity on the website since we started a weekly competition*

- *activité*

**argue** /'ɑ:(r)gju/ Verb

if you *argue* with someone, you have an angry discussion with them because you do not agree with what they say

Collocates: argue about something | argue with someone  
*even as children they were always arguing* | *don't argue, just do what I say!*

Noun: *argument*

Collocates: an argument about something | an argument with someone

*we had a long argument about politics*

- *se disputer*

**condition** /kən'diʃ(ə)n/ Noun

the *condition* of something is the particular state it is in, for example whether it is broken or not

Collocates: in good/bad condition

*it's not in perfect condition* | *it's ten years old but still in very good condition*

- *état*

**cover** /'kʌvə(r)/ Verb

if your insurance *covers* certain things, the insurance company will pay you if any of those things break or happen to you

Collocates: cover someone against something | be covered to do something | be covered for something

*we're covered against flooding and fire* | *I'm covered to drive any car, not just my own*

Noun: *cover*

*I took out insurance cover before going on holiday*

- *couvrir*

**direct debit** /,dɪrekt 'deɪt/ Noun

a *direct debit* is an arrangement with your bank that lets a company take money from your account regularly, for example to pay for your electricity or for your rent

Collocates: pay by direct debit | set up a direct debit | cancel a direct debit

*it's easier to pay your bills by direct debit* | *you can set up a direct debit online or over the phone*

- *prélèvement automatique*

**fare** /feə(r)/ Noun

the *fare* is the amount of money you have to pay for a particular journey on public transport or in a taxi

Collocates: bus/train/air fare | one-way/return fare | standard/second class/first class fare | taxi/cab fare

*train fares have just gone up again* | *the return fare to New York is £475*

- *tarif*

**go up** /,gəʊ 'ʌp/ Phrasal verb

if something *goes up*, it increases

*unemployment went up by 2% last year* | *petrol prices have been going up since the winter*

- *augmenter*

**irregular** /ɪ'regjʊlə(r)/ Adjective

something that is *irregular* is not usual or expected and might not be honest or legal

*I work irregular hours (I don't start and finish at the same time every day)* | *some of his business activity was a bit irregular*

Adverb: *irregularly*

*we were paid for the work, but very irregularly*

- *irrégulier*

**joint** /dʒɔɪnt/ Adjective

*joint* things are shared or owned by two people at the same time

*I have a joint account with my partner (an account that two people use at the same time)* | *the two presidents made a joint announcement after the conference*

Adverb: *jointly*

- *joint*

**loan** /ləʊn/ Noun

a *loan* is an amount of money that someone borrows

Collocates: take out a loan | repay a loan

*I took out a loan to buy the car* | *it took her three years to repay the loan*

- *emprunt*

**manage** /'mænɪdʒ/ Verb

if you *manage* to do something, you succeed in doing it, even though it might be quite difficult

Collocates: manage to do something

*I haven't managed to save much money yet this year* | *did you manage to get the tickets for the match on Saturday?*

- *réussir*

**mark** /mɑ:(r)k/ Noun

a *mark* is a small area of dirt or damage on the surface of something

*the coffee cup left a mark on the table* | *when he gave the car back there were marks on the passenger door* | *the dog left bite marks on my arm*

- *marque*

**payment** /ˈpeɪmənt/ Noun

a *payment* is an amount of money that you pay at a particular time

Collocates: make a payment

*I borrowed £1,200 and will make 12 monthly payments of £105 | the final payment is due at the end of July*

Verb: *pay*

Collocates: pay (something) for something

- *paiement*

**point out** /ˌpɔɪnt 'aʊt/ Phrasal verb

if you *point* something *out*, you tell someone it exists or is true

Collocates: point something out to someone

*he pointed out that it was going to be very cold on the journey | she pointed out to him that he was wrong again*

- *faire remarquer*

**recession** /rɪˈseʃ(ə)n/ Noun

if there is a *recession*, there is much less business activity than usual, so some businesses do not make enough money and some people lose their jobs

Collocates: a global/worldwide/world recession | a deep/severe recession | go into recession | be in recession

*I'm going to move back home before the recession here gets any worse | the whole world is facing a global recession*

- *récession*

**separately** /ˈsep(ə)rətli/ Adverb

if things are *separate*, they are not together. If things happen *separately*, they do not happen at the same time  
*your new PIN will be sent separately | dry food like flour and sugar is stored separately, away from any liquids*

Adjective: *separate* | Verb: *separate*

- *séparément*

**software** /ˈsɒf(t),weə(r)/ Noun uncount

*software* is programs used by computers. Computer equipment is called *hardware*

Collocates: download/install/update software | a software engineer | computer software

*it takes a few hours to download the software | I had a few problems installing the software*

- *logiciel*

**speed up** /ˌspiːd 'ʌp/ Phrasal verb

if something *speeds up*, or if you *speed* it *up*, it starts to move or happen more quickly

*the software is really good and will speed things up | we can speed up when we get on to the motorway*

- *accélérer*

**PHRASAL VERBS WITH UP**

Sometimes, *up* in a phrasal verb means an increase and down shows a decrease:

*The car sped up / slowed down.*

*Unemployment has gone up / gone down a lot.*

However, more often, the meaning is not obvious. Always think of the two words as having one meaning.

*He's gone down with flu. (he's caught flu)*

*She's given up smoking. (she's stopped smoking completely)*

**take out** /ˌteɪk 'aʊt/ Phrasal verb

if you *take out* a loan or an insurance policy, you arrange to borrow money from a bank or buy an insurance policy

*we can't afford to take out a mortgage so we're still renting a flat | don't forget to take out travel insurance before you go to Spain*

- *souscrire à*

**transfer** /trænsˈfɜː(r)/ Verb

if you *transfer* someone or something, you move them to another place

*I want to transfer some money to my son in Germany | the boy was transferred by plane to a hospital in Melbourne*

Noun: *transfer*

*the company does airport transfers (takes people from the airport to their hotels)*

- *transférer*

**used** /juːst/ Adjective

if you *get used* to something, you start being able to use it or understand it easily because it is no longer new or surprising to you

Collocates: get used to doing something

*after a day or two in France I was quite used to driving on the right | I could never get used to calling my teacher John instead of Mr Simms*

- *habitué*

# 16 EVENTS

## STUDENT'S BOOK PAGE 141

### ceremony /ˈserəməni/ Noun

a *ceremony* is a formal event which involves a traditional set of actions

Collocates: a wedding/funeral ceremony

*wedding ceremonies are frequently performed in the park | the opening ceremony of the Olympic Games*

Adjective: *ceremonial*

*a ceremonial parade will take place in Moscow on May 8th*

- *cérémonie*

### parade /pə'reɪd/ Noun

a *parade* is a big event when a lot of people or vehicles go through the streets of a town as part of a big celebration

*the parade will set off from the Town Hall | there were street parades, followed by fireworks in the evening*

- *défilé*

### religious /rə'lɪdʒəs/ Adjective

someone who is *religious* believes in a god and follows the rules of a particular religion. A *religious* activity is one that is organised by a particular religion

*many of them were deeply religious | many religious leaders disagreed with the government | she taught religious education in the local school*

Noun: *religion*

*they did not belong to any organised religion*

- *religieux*

## STUDENT'S BOOK PAGES 142–143

### background /'bækgraʊnd/ Adjective

if an object is in the *background*, it is behind the main thing you are looking at. Sounds you can hear but are not listening to are in the *background*

Collocates: background music | background noise | in the background

*it was good background music | the TV was on in the background | you could see it in the background*

- *fond*

### bowl /bəʊl/ Noun

a *bowl* is a round, deep dish with an open top that you use to serve food

*a few bowls of olives | a glass bowl*

- *bol*

### buffet /'bʊfeɪ/ Noun

a *buffet* is a meal at a social event or in a hotel or restaurant in which people take food from a large table and sit somewhere else to eat it

*there was a buffet, and everyone helped themselves | they serve a good breakfast buffet at the hotel*

- *buffet*

### chat /tʃæt/ Verb

if you *chat*, you talk to someone in a friendly and informal way

Collocates: chat to someone

*we chatted for a while before his train arrived | she spent the journey chatting to her aunt on the phone*

Noun: *chat* | Adjective: *chatty*

Collocates: a chat with someone

*Nice to see you! Have you got time for a chat?*

- *bavarder*

### clear /kliə(r)/ Verb

if you *clear* a place, you make it empty by removing everything from it

*the second DJ completely cleared the dance floor | police cleared the area around the accident*

- *débarrasser*

### convert /kən'vɜː(r)t/ Verb

if you *convert* something, you make it into something different

Collocates: convert something into something

*it used to be a factory, but they converted it into an events venue a few years ago | the house has been converted into flats*

Noun: *conversion*

*we've had a loft conversion done (the space under the roof has been made into a room)*

- *transformer*

### distant /'dɪstənt/ Adjective

if someone is *distant*, they are not very friendly or interested in the people around them

*they were a bit cold and distant, to be honest | he's become rather distant since he lost his job*

- *distant*

**gorgeous** /'gɔː(r)dʒəs/ Adjective

someone who is *gorgeous* is very attractive. Something that is *gorgeous* is beautiful or tastes wonderful

Collocates: absolutely/utterly gorgeous | drop-dead gorgeous

*his new girlfriend is absolutely gorgeous | thank you for the flowers, they're gorgeous*

• *magnifique*

**impressive** /ɪm'presɪv/ Adjective

something that is *impressive* is very good and makes you admire it

*the organisation of the whole event was very impressive | his piano playing was really impressive*

Adverb: *impressively* | Verb: *impress*

*an impressively large collection of CDs*

• *impressionnant*

**mix** /mɪks/ Verb

if you *mix* at a social occasion, you move around talking to lots of different people rather than just talking to one or two people the whole time

*No-one was really mixing at the party | she was very shy and found it difficult to mix*

• *sympathiser*

**occasion** /ə'keɪʒ(ə)n/ Noun

an *occasion* is an event that is important

Collocates: a special occasion | mark the occasion

*what was the occasion for the party? Was it someone's birthday? | I only wear this dress on special occasions*

• *occasion*

**pick at** /'pɪk ,æt/ Phrasal verb

if you *pick at* food, you eat only small amounts of it

*there were some crisps for guests to pick at | I wasn't hungry so I didn't eat the chicken and just picked at the salad*

• *manger du bout des dents*

**reception** /rɪ'sepʃ(ə)n/ Noun

a *reception* is a big formal party for a celebration such as a wedding, or in order to welcome someone somewhere

Collocates: a wedding reception | an official reception | hold a reception

*my brother's holding his wedding reception on a boat | a reception for 500 people was held in the evening*

• *réception*

**round** /raʊnd/ Adverb

if you have people *round*, they come to your home on a social visit

Collocates: have someone round | come round | go round

*I had a few friends round for dinner | why don't you come round on Thursday after work?*

• *autour*

**ruin** /'ruːɪn/ Verb

to *ruin* something means to spoil it completely

*there was a big argument which ruined the rest of the evening for me | I know it will just ruin my life if I don't get in to university*

• *gâcher*

**set up** /,set 'ʌp/ Phrasal verb

if you *set something up*, you make all the necessary preparations for it to start and to work properly

*we've set up a new website | I run the company now, but it was my father who set it up*

• *construire*

**supposed** /sə'pəʊzd/ Adjective

if something is *supposed* to happen, it has been planned and is meant to happen in a particular way. If you say that something is *supposed* to be true, most people believe it, although you are not sure

Collocates: supposed to be

*don't tell her about the party – it's supposed to be a surprise | I haven't read it, but it's supposed to be a really good book | you're supposed to buy a ticket before you get on the train*

• *censé*

**surprise** /sə(r)'praɪz/ Noun

a *surprise* is something exciting or shocking that happens which you did not expect

Collocates: by surprise

*it was a pleasant surprise to get your email |*

*the question took me by surprise*

Verb: *surprise* | Adjective: *surprising* | Adjective: *surprised* |

Adverb: *surprisingly*

• *surprise*

**venue** /'venjuː/ Noun

a *venue* is the place where an event is happening or is going to happen

*it's an amazing venue for a party | the World Cup is held at various venues across the country*

• *lieu*

**STUDENT'S BOOK PAGES 144–145****age** /eɪdʒ/ Noun

you can refer to certain periods of time as a particular *Age*. For example, the period when people used stone for making things is called the *Stone Age*. A later period is called the *Iron Age* because people discovered iron and used it to make tools, weapons, etc.

Collocates: the Stone/Bronze/Iron Age | the Age of Steam | the Atomic/Nuclear Age

*people have lived in the region since the Stone Age | the 19th century was the age of steam and steel*

- âge

**civil war** /ˌsɪv(ə)l 'wɔː(r)/ Noun

a *civil war* is a war fought between groups of people within one country

*the English civil war was nearly 400 years ago | after the revolution of 1917, Russia faced several years of civil war*

- guerre civile

**communist** /ˈkɒmjunist/ Adjective

communism is the political system that controlled Russia and the Soviet Union from 1917, and a lot of Eastern Europe from 1945 until 1991. They had a *communist* political system, and that period in their history is the *communist* period

*in 1920, Kazakhstan became part of the communist Soviet Union | the communist party of the Soviet Union*

Noun: *communism* | Noun: *communist*

*Russian communism came to an end in 1991*

- communiste

**economic** /ˌiːkə'nɒmɪk/ Adjective

a country's economy is all the business activity that goes on and the money that is moving around the country. Things related to the economy are *economic*

*there were political and economic problems in the country | the economic situation is getting worse*

Noun: *economy* | Noun: *economics*

*the economy is recovering after the crisis of 2008*

- économique

**empire** /'empaɪə(r)/ Noun

an *empire* is a group of countries that is controlled by just one country. An *empire* is also a group of companies controlled by one person or organisation

*the Roman Empire lasted about 500 years | Murdoch created a global business empire*

Noun: *emperor* | Noun: *empress* | Adjective: *imperial*

- empire

**establish** /ɪ'stæblɪʃ/ Verb

to *establish* something means to start it or build it so that it will last for a long time

*London was established by the Romans | my grandfather established the company in 1963*

Noun: *establishment*

*the first business establishments here opened in 1905*

- fonder

**exporter** /ɪk'spɔː(r)tə(r)/ Noun

an *exporter* is a company or country that sells goods to other countries. Countries or companies that buy goods from other countries are importers

*Thailand is one of the world's largest rice exporters | by 2020 the US will be a net exporter of gas (it will sell more gas abroad than it buys from other countries)*

Verb: *export* | Noun: *export*

- exportateur

**force** /fɔː(r)s/ Verb

to *force* someone to do something means to make them do it even though they really do not want to

Collocates: force someone to do something

*the last Kazakh nomads were forced to live on farms or work in industry | my parents never tried to force me to go to university | I forced myself to get out of bed at five o'clock*

- contraindre

**free spirit** /ˌfriː 'spɪrɪt/ Noun

a *free spirit* is someone who does only what they want to do and does not behave in the way people are expected to behave. If you call someone a *free spirit*, you admire them because of the way they live

*as a child she had been very wild, a free spirit | Bev was a free spirit and always said exactly what she thought*

- esprit libre

**friendship** /'fren(d)ʃɪp/ Noun

*friendship* is the state of being someone's friend and the feelings friends have for each other

Collocates: develop a friendship (with someone) | a close friendship

*on 22nd March, we celebrate friendship and unity | she developed a strong friendship with Picasso*

Noun: *friend* | Adverb: *friendly*

Collocates: a close friend | best friend

- amitié

**grass** /grɑːs/ Noun uncount

*grass* is a low green plant that grows all over the ground. It is made up of thin pointed green leaves

*they moved around to find grass and water for their animals | he's cutting the grass in the back garden*

Adjective: *grassy*

• *herbe*

**independent** /ˌɪndɪˈpendənt/ Adjective

if a country is *independent*, it controls itself and does not have another country ruling it

Collocates: become independent

*the United States became independent in 1776 | Mugabe is the only leader Zimbabwe has had since it became independent*

Noun: *independence*

Collocates: gain independence

*the country is fighting for its independence*

• *indépendant*

**invade** /ɪnˈveɪd/ Verb

when an army *invades* a country, it goes in there and tries to take control of the country by fighting

*the Vikings first invaded Britain in 786 | 20,000 soldiers were waiting for the order to invade*

Noun: *invasion* | Noun: *invader*

Collocates: launch an invasion

*the invasion was launched (started) on June 6th*

• *envahir*

**Islam** /ˈɪslɑːm/ Noun uncount

*Islam* is the religion that follows the teachings of Mohammed. People who belong to this religion are called Muslims

*Islam was introduced to the region in the eighth century | major world religions, such as Christianity, Islam and Judaism*

Adjective: *Islamic*

• *Islam*

**key** /kiː/ Adjective

a *key* event, thing, or person is one that is very important in a particular situation

*two key events had an important influence on the region | write down the three key points from chapter 1*

• *majeur*

**king** /kɪŋ/ Noun

a *king* is a man who rules a country, and whose son or daughter will rule after he dies. A woman who rules a country in this way is a queen. In Britain, the queen is the head of the country, but she has a parliamentary government that makes the laws

*the king was killed in 1649 | Henry VIII is probably the most famous English king*

• *roi*

**leader** /ˈliːdə(r)/ Noun

the *leader* of an organised group is the person who is in charge of it and who is responsible for all the big decisions  
*effective schools need effective leaders | Churchill was a great leader*

Verb: *lead* | Noun: *leadership*

• *dirigeant*

**Muslim** /ˈmʊsləm/ Adjective

a *Muslim* is someone who belongs to the religion of Islam. *Muslim* traditions and beliefs are based on Islam

*Iran is a Muslim country | she was born into a Muslim family*

Noun: *Muslim*

• *musulman*

**occupy** /ˈɒkjʊpaɪ/ Verb

to *occupy* a country means to stay and control it after invading it

*the Vikings eventually occupied half the country | Macau was previously occupied by Portugal*

Noun: *occupation*

*during the occupation no one was allowed to leave the city*

• *occupier*

**parliament** /ˈpɑː(r)ləmənt/ Noun

a *parliament* is a group of people who have been chosen to make the laws and govern a country. In the English Civil War, *Parliament* was all the people who did not want the king to control the country, but who wanted to choose a group of people to rule

*she was elected to parliament in 2010 | a member of parliament*

Adjective: *parliamentary*

• *parlement*

**party** /ˈpɑː(r)ti/ Noun

a political *party* is an organised group that tries to get elected and become the government in a country

*she joined the Labour party when she was 16 | the two main parties each got over 40% of the votes*

• *parti*

**political** /pəˈlɪtɪk(ə)l/ Adjective

*politics* is the work of getting power and running a country. Things that are to do with politics are *political*, and the people involved are *politicians*

*his political career ended when he lost the election in 1997 | there were two main political parties in the country*

Adverb: *politically* | Noun: *politics* | Noun: *politician*

*she was politically active at university*

• *politique*

**producer** /prə'dju:sə(r)/ Noun

a *producer* of something is a company or country that makes that thing or that takes it out of the ground

Collocates: a producer of something

*Kazakhstan is now the 11th largest producer of oil and gas in the world | Scotland is a major producer of wood*

Verb: *produce*

- *producteur*

**rapidly** /'ræpɪdli/ Adverb

if something happens *rapidly*, it happens very quickly

*the population grew rapidly | things improved rapidly after the election*

Adjective: *rapid*

*a period of rapid population growth*

- *rapidement*

**region** /'ri:dʒ(ə)n/ Noun

a *region* is a large area of a country

*people have lived in the region for thousands of years | it can get very cold in the northern and eastern regions of Russia*

Adjective: *regional*

- *région*

**resource** /rɪ'zɔ:(r)s/ Noun

*resources* are things that you have and can use. Natural *resources* are things like coal, gas, oil, iron, etc. that are in the ground and that can be taken out and used

*they are an exporter of natural resources | the university library is a fantastic resource*

- *ressource*

**route** /ru:t/ Noun

a *route* is the roads and direction you follow to get from one place to another

*the Silk Road trade route went through Talaz | I'm going to try a different route when we go to Scotland next week*

- *itinéraire*

**rule** /ru:l/ Verb

to *rule* a country means to have power and control over it

Collocates: rule over something

*America was once ruled by Britain | Stalin ruled over Russia and another 14 Soviet republics*

Noun: *rule* | Noun: *ruler*

Collocates: be under someone's rule

*the area was under British rule for 200 years*

- *dominer*

**shortage** /'ʃɔ:(r)tɪdʒ/ Noun

if there is a *shortage* of something, there is not enough of it

Collocates: a shortage of something

*there were serious food shortages during the winter | there's a shortage of teachers in London*

Adjective: *short*

Collocates: be short of something | run short of something

- *pénurie*

**trade** /treɪd/ Noun uncount

*trade* is the business activity of buying and selling or goods  
*our company does a lot of trade with China | he believes in free trade (the ability to buy and sell goods with another country without paying taxes when goods go into a country)*

Verb: *trade* | Noun: *trader*

Collocates: trade with someone

- *commerce*

**unique** /ju:'ni:k/ Adjective

if something is *unique*, there is only one of it, and there is nothing else that is the same

*the band had a unique style of music | I met a lot of interesting and unique people*

Adverb: *uniquely*

*her language ability makes her uniquely qualified for the job (no one else has the same skills as her)*

- *unique*

**-wing** /wɪŋ/ Noun

in politics, people who are on the *left-wing* have ideas that are based on socialism and equality. People on the *right-wing* believe in capitalism

*Michael Foot was a politician on the left-wing of the Labour party, while Tony Blair was on the right-wing | she thought that Johnson was too right-wing so she didn't vote for him*

- *droite / gauche*

## STUDENT'S BOOK PAGES 146–147

### come up /ˌkʌm 'ʌp/ Phrasal verb

when the sun *comes up*, it appears in the sky at the beginning of the morning and it becomes light. At the end of the day, the sun goes down and it becomes dark

*we reached the peak just as the sun was coming up | I watched the sun come up then went inside for breakfast*

Opposite – Phrasal Verb: *go down*

- se lever

### consider /kən'sɪdə(r)/ Verb

if you *consider* something, you think about it carefully before making a decision

Collocates: *consider doing something*

*have you considered going to university? | I considered taking the job, but in the end decided to go travelling for a year*

Noun: *consideration*

Collocates: *give consideration to something | under consideration*

*they gave serious consideration to the idea of opening a new shop in Leeds*

- réfléchir à

### controversial /ˌkɒntrə'vɜː(r)ʃ(ə)l/ Adjective

if something or someone is *controversial*, different people hold different opinions about them very strongly and cannot agree about them

Collocates: *highly/deeply controversial | a controversial subject/issue/topic | a controversial decision*

*he was a controversial figure, but I liked him | the government has done a few controversial things recently*

Adverb: *controversially* | Noun: *controversy*

Collocates: *cause controversy*

*controversially, there were no women teachers in the school*

- controversé

### experimental /ɪk'sperɪ'ment(ə)l/ Adjective

an experiment is a scientific test that you do to see what happens under certain conditions. Activities that you do like this are *experimental*

*the medicine was still in the experimental stage | the experimental methods of Dr Hughes*

Adverb: *experimentally* | Verb: *experiment*

Noun: *experiment*

Collocates: *experiment on someone or something | carry out/conduct an experiment*

*it has been proved experimentally that the plant will not grow in the dark*

- expérimental

### grateful /'grætf(ə)l/ Adjective

if you are *grateful* to someone, you are glad that they have helped you or given you something

Collocates: *be/feel grateful to someone | be/feel grateful for something*

*I'll always be grateful to the doctor who saved my sight | the families were very grateful for the work she did*

Adverb: *gratefully* | Noun: *gratitude*

*any suggestions will be gratefully received*

- reconnaissant

### peak /pi:k/ Noun

a *peak* is the top of a mountain

*we reached the peak just as the sun was coming up | Mont Blanc is the highest peak in Europe*

- pic

### regret /rɪ'ɡret/ Noun

if you have *regrets* about something, you feel bad about it and wish things had happened differently

Collocates: *have (a) regret*

*one of my biggest regrets was that I missed his memorial service | he has finally expressed regret for his unacceptable behaviour*

Verb: *regret*

Collocates: *regret that | regret doing something*

*he regretted sending the email while he was still angry*

- regret

### restore /rɪ'stɔː(r)/ Verb

if you *restore* something that was broken or not working properly, you repair it or do something so that it starts working normally again

*luckily, my sight was restored | we must restore peace to the country after the war*

Noun: *restoration*

*restoration of the cathedral took over 20 years*

- restituer

### severely /sɪ'vɪə(r)li/ Adverb

*severely* means extremely badly

*my eyes had been severely damaged in an accident at work | he became severely depressed after losing his job*

Adjective: *severe* | Noun: *severity*

- sérieusement

**sexual discrimination** /ˌsɛkʃʊəl dɪˌskrɪmɪˈneɪʃ(ə)n/

Noun uncount

*discrimination* is behaviour that deliberately deals with a person or group of people unfairly and unequally. *Sexual discrimination* or *sex discrimination* is unfair treatment of someone because of their gender (whether they are male or female); *racial discrimination* is unfair treatment of people because of the colour of their skin

Collocates: racial/gender/sex discrimination

*she fought for women's rights and against sexual discrimination* | *there was no evidence of racial discrimination in the school*

Verb: *discriminate*

Collocates: discriminate against someone

- **discrimination sexuelle**

---

**sight** /saɪt/ Noun uncountsomeone's *sight* is their ability to see things

*she lost the sight in one eye after the accident* | *the doctors saved my sight by operating straight away*

- **vue**

---

**stage** /steɪdʒ/ Nouna *stage* is a particular period of time during a process

Collocates: the early/final stages of something

*we're still in the early stages of the project* | *the building is in its final stage, and should be finished next month*

- **stade**

---

**surgeon** /ˈsɜː(r)dʒ(ə)n/ Nouna *surgeon* is a doctor who cuts people's bodies open in order to repair them or replace parts of them

*thanks to my surgeon, I can now see my two kids* | *it takes years of training to become a surgeon*

- **chirurgien**

---

**welcoming** /ˈwelkəmɪŋ/ Adjectiveif someone you do not know is *welcoming*, they are very friendly to you when you arrive somewhere

*the people there were very welcoming when we arrived* | *a hotel with a welcoming atmosphere*

Verb: *welcome* | Adjective: *welcome*

Collocates: make someone welcome

- **accueillant**

---

**STUDENT'S BOOK PAGE 148****continent** /ˈkɒntɪnənt/ Noun

a *continent* is one of the seven large areas of land on the earth. They are Asia, Africa, North America, South America, Antarctica, Europe, and Australia

*Asia is the largest continent, and Australia is the smallest* | *when he got to Cuba, Columbus thought he had discovered a continent, not an island*

- **continent**

---

**earth** /ɜː(r)θ/ Nounthe *earth* is the planet that we live on

*he now knew the earth was round* | *the earth is about 4 billion years old*

- **Terre**

---

**flat** /flæt/ Adjective

something that is *flat* is level and even, not round or curved

*people used to think the world was flat* | *put the board on a flat surface*

- **plat**

---

**persuade** /pə(r)'sweɪd/ Verbif you *persuade* someone to do something, you talk to them and give them reasons which make them do it

Collocates: persuade someone to do something | persuade someone that

*Columbus persuaded the king to give him some money* | *I tried to persuade him to change his mind*

Noun: *persuasion* | Adjective: *persuasive* |Adverb: *persuasively*

*after a little persuasion, he agreed to lend me his car*

- **convaincre**

---

**voyage** /ˈvɔɪɪdʒ/ Nouna *voyage* is a long journey, usually across the ocean on a ship

*Columbus did not have enough money to pay for his voyage himself* | *the sea was very rough on the first day of the voyage*

Noun: *voyager*

- **voyage**

---